

# Withdrawn Draft

## Warning Notice

The attached draft document has been withdrawn, and is provided solely for historical purposes. It has been superseded by the document identified below.

**Withdrawal Date** June 30, 2020

**Original Release Date** July 2, 2019

## Superseding Document

**Status** Final

**Series/Number** NIST Special Publication 800-77 Revision 1

**Title** Guide to IPsec VPNs

**Publication Date** June 2020

**DOI**

**CSRC URL** <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-77/rev-1/draft>

**Additional Information**

**Draft NIST Special Publication 800-77**  
**Revision 1**

---

**Guide to IPsec VPNs**

---

Elaine Barker  
Quynh Dang  
Sheila Frankel  
Karen Scarfone  
Paul Wouters

This publication is available free of charge from:  
<https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-77r1-draft>

---

C O M P U T E R   S E C U R I T Y

---

**Draft NIST Special Publication 800-77**  
**Revision 1**

**Guide to IPsec VPNs**

Elaine Barker

Quynh Dang

Sheila Frankel

*Computer Security Division*

*Information Technology Laboratory*

Karen Scarfone

*Scarfone Cybersecurity*

*Clifton, VA*

Paul Wouters

*No Hats Corporation*

*Toronto, ON, Canada*

This publication is available free of charge from:  
<https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-77r1-draft>

July 2019



U.S. Department of Commerce  
*Wilbur L. Ross, Jr., Secretary*

National Institute of Standards and Technology  
*Walter Copan, NIST Director and Under Secretary of Commerce for Standards and Technology*

## Authority

This publication has been developed by NIST in accordance with its statutory responsibilities under the Federal Information Security Modernization Act (FISMA) of 2014, 44 U.S.C. § 3551 *et seq.*, Public Law (P.L.) 113-283. NIST is responsible for developing information security standards and guidelines, including minimum requirements for federal information systems, but such standards and guidelines shall not apply to national security systems without the express approval of appropriate federal officials exercising policy authority over such systems. This guideline is consistent with the requirements of the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-130.

Nothing in this publication should be taken to contradict the standards and guidelines made mandatory and binding on federal agencies by the Secretary of Commerce under statutory authority. Nor should these guidelines be interpreted as altering or superseding the existing authorities of the Secretary of Commerce, Director of the OMB, or any other federal official. This publication may be used by nongovernmental organizations on a voluntary basis and is not subject to copyright in the United States. Attribution would, however, be appreciated by NIST.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 800-77 Revision 1  
Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Publ. 800-77 Rev. 1, 161 pages (July 2019)  
CODEN: NSPUE2

This publication is available free of charge from:  
<https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-77r1-draft>

Certain commercial entities, equipment, or materials may be identified in this document in order to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply recommendation or endorsement by NIST, nor is it intended to imply that the entities, materials, or equipment are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

There may be references in this publication to other publications currently under development by NIST in accordance with its assigned statutory responsibilities. The information in this publication, including concepts and methodologies, may be used by federal agencies even before the completion of such companion publications. Thus, until each publication is completed, current requirements, guidelines, and procedures, where they exist, remain operative. For planning and transition purposes, federal agencies may wish to closely follow the development of these new publications by NIST.

Organizations are encouraged to review all draft publications during public comment periods and provide feedback to NIST. Many NIST cybersecurity publications, other than the ones noted above, are available at <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications>.

**Public comment period: July 2, 2019 through October 8, 2019**

National Institute of Standards and Technology  
Attn: Computer Security Division, Information Technology Laboratory  
100 Bureau Drive (Mail Stop 8930) Gaithersburg, MD 20899-8930  
Email: [revision\\_of\\_SP800-77@nist.gov](mailto:revision_of_SP800-77@nist.gov)

All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA).

## 94                                    **Reports on Computer Systems Technology**

95    The Information Technology Laboratory (ITL) at the National Institute of Standards and  
96    Technology (NIST) promotes the U.S. economy and public welfare by providing technical  
97    leadership for the Nation's measurement and standards infrastructure. ITL develops tests, test  
98    methods, reference data, proof of concept implementations, and technical analyses to advance  
99    the development and productive use of information technology. ITL's responsibilities include the  
100   development of management, administrative, technical, and physical standards and guidelines for  
101   the cost-effective security and privacy of other than national security-related information in  
102   federal information systems. The Special Publication 800-series reports on ITL's research,  
103   guidelines, and outreach efforts in information system security, and its collaborative activities  
104   with industry, government, and academic organizations.

## 106                                   **Abstract**

107   Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) is a widely used network layer security control for protecting  
108   communications. IPsec is a framework of open standards for ensuring private communications  
109   over Internet Protocol (IP) networks. IPsec configuration is usually performed using the Internet  
110   Key Exchange (IKE) protocol. This publication provides practical guidance to organizations on  
111   implementing security services based on IPsec so that they can mitigate the risks associated with  
112   transmitting sensitive information across networks. The document focuses on how IPsec  
113   provides network layer security services and how organizations can implement IPsec and IKE to  
114   provide security under different circumstances. It also describes alternatives to IPsec and  
115   discusses under what circumstances each alternative may be appropriate.

## 117                                   **Keywords**

118   communications security; Internet Key Exchange (IKE); Internet Protocol (IP); Internet Protocol  
119   Security (IPsec); network layer security; networking; virtual private network (VPN).

## 121 **Acknowledgments**

122 The authors, Elaine Barker, Quynh Dang, and Sheila Frankel of NIST, wish to thank everyone  
123 who has contributed to this revision of Special Publication (SP) 800-77, particularly Andrew  
124 Regenscheid, David Waltermire, and Lily Chen of NIST, and Dorothy E. Cooley and James  
125 Banoczi of the National Security Agency (NSA).

126 The authors acknowledge the following individuals (with their original affiliations) and  
127 organizations that assisted in the development of the original SP 800-77:

- 128 • The authors of the original version: Sheila Frankel of NIST, and Karen Kent, Ryan  
129 Lewkowski, Angela D. Orebaugh, Ronald W. Ritchey, and Steven R. Sharma of Booz  
130 Allen Hamilton
- 131 • Bill Burr, Tim Grance, Okhee Kim, Peter Mell, and Murugiah Souppaya of NIST
- 132 • Darren Hartman and Mark Zimmerman of ICSA Labs
- 133 • Paul Hoffman of the VPN Consortium
- 134 • Representatives from the Department of Energy, the Department of State, the  
135 Environmental Protection Agency, and the U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission

136

## 137 **Audience**

138 This document has been created for network architects, network administrators, security staff,  
139 technical support staff, and computer security program managers who are responsible for the  
140 technical aspects of preparing, operating, and securing networked infrastructures. The material in  
141 this document is technically oriented, and it is assumed that readers have at least a basic  
142 understanding of networking and network security.

143

## 144 **Trademark Information**

145 All names are registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies.

146

147

**Call for Patent Claims**

148 This public review includes a call for information on essential patent claims (claims whose use  
149 would be required for compliance with the guidance or requirements in this Information  
150 Technology Laboratory (ITL) draft publication). Such guidance and/or requirements may be  
151 directly stated in this ITL Publication or by reference to another publication. This call also  
152 includes disclosure, where known, of the existence of pending U.S. or foreign patent applications  
153 relating to this ITL draft publication and of any relevant unexpired U.S. or foreign patents.

154 ITL may require from the patent holder, or a party authorized to make assurances on its behalf,  
155 in written or electronic form, either:

156 a) assurance in the form of a general disclaimer to the effect that such party does not hold  
157 and does not currently intend holding any essential patent claim(s); or

158 b) assurance that a license to such essential patent claim(s) will be made available to  
159 applicants desiring to utilize the license for the purpose of complying with the guidance  
160 or requirements in this ITL draft publication either:

161 i. under reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free of any unfair  
162 discrimination; or

163 ii. without compensation and under reasonable terms and conditions that are  
164 demonstrably free of any unfair discrimination.

165 Such assurance shall indicate that the patent holder (or third party authorized to make assurances  
166 on its behalf) will include in any documents transferring ownership of patents subject to the  
167 assurance, provisions sufficient to ensure that the commitments in the assurance are binding on  
168 the transferee, and that the transferee will similarly include appropriate provisions in the event of  
169 future transfers with the goal of binding each successor-in-interest.

170 The assurance shall also indicate that it is intended to be binding on successors-in-interest  
171 regardless of whether such provisions are included in the relevant transfer documents.

172 Such statements should be addressed to: [revision\\_of\\_SP800-77@nist.gov](mailto:revision_of_SP800-77@nist.gov).

## Executive Summary

Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) is a suite of open standards for ensuring private communications over public networks. It is the most common network layer security control, typically used to encrypt IP traffic between hosts in a network and for creating a virtual private network (VPN). A VPN is a virtual network built on top of existing physical networks that provides a secure communications mechanism for data and control information transmitted between computers or networks. IPsec is also used as a component that provides the security for many other internet protocols. The User Datagram Protocol (UDP) usage guidelines [1] specify IPsec as one of the methods to secure UDP.

The Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol is most commonly used to establish IPsec-based VPNs. The terms IKE and IPsec are often used interchangeably, although that is not correct. In practice, the terms “IPsec VPN,” “IKEv2 VPN,” “Cisco IPsec,” “IPsec XAUTH,” and “L2TP/IPsec” all refer to IPsec-based VPN connections. Some examples of technologies and protocols that use IKE and/or IPsec are:

- 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation Partnership Project (3GPP) mobile phone telephony standard (Long-Term Evolution [LTE]/5<sup>th</sup> Generation [5G], Wireless Fidelity [WiFi] calling) [2], [3]
- Ethernet VPN (EVPN) and Virtual eXtensible Local Area Network (VXLAN) [4]
- Software-Defined Networking (SDN) and Software-Defined Wide Area Network (SDWAN)
- Segment Routing [5]
- Data Center Network Virtualization Overlay (NVO3) Networks [6]
- Generic Network Virtualization Encapsulation (GENEVE) [7]
- Smart Grid [8]
- Constrained Application Protocol (CoAP)
- Low-Power Wireless Personal Area Network (6LowPAN) [9]
- Routing protocol protection [10] such as Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)/BGP Monitoring Protocol (BMP) [11] and Open Shortest Path First (OSPFv3) [12]

VPNs protect communications carried over public networks such as the Internet as well as private networks such as fiber networks or Multi-Protocol Label Switching (MPLS) networks. A VPN can provide several types of data protection, including confidentiality, integrity, data origin authentication, replay protection, and access control. The primary VPN architectures are as follows:

- **Gateway-to-gateway.** This architecture protects communications between two specific networks, such as an organization’s main office network and a branch office network, or two business partners’ networks.
- **Remote access.** Also known as host-to-gateway, this architecture protects communications between one or more individual hosts and a specific network belonging to an organization. The remote access architecture is most often used to allow hosts on



unsecured networks, such as traveling employees and telecommuters, to gain access to internal organizational services, such as the organization's email and Web servers.

- **Host-to-host.** A host-to-host architecture protects communication between two specific computers. It can be used when a small number of users need to use or administer a remote system that requires the use of inherently insecure protocols.
- **Mesh.** In a mesh architecture, many hosts within one or a few networks all establish individual VPNs with each other.

The guide provides an overview of the types of security controls that can provide protection for network communications that are widely used throughout the world. IP communications are composed of four layers that work together: application, transport, network, and data link. Security controls exist for network communications at each of the four layers. As data is prepared for transport, it is passed from the highest to the lowest layer, with each layer adding more information. Because of this, a security control at a higher layer cannot provide full protection for lower layers, because the lower layers add information to the communications after the higher layer security controls have been applied. The primary disadvantage of lower layer security controls is that they are less flexible and granular than higher layer controls. Accordingly, network layer controls have become widely used for securing communications because they provide a more balanced solution.

IPsec is a network layer security protocol with two main components:

- **Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)** is the protocol that transports the encrypted and integrity-protected network communications across the network. If only integrity protection is needed without encryption, the ESP protocol can use NULL encryption. An older method for IPsec transport of non-encrypted data is to use the Authentication Header (AH) protocol, but this method is no longer recommended by this guidance.
- **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)** is the protocol used by IPsec to negotiate IPsec connection settings; authenticate endpoints to each other; define the security parameters of IPsec-protected connections; negotiate session keys; and manage, update, and delete IPsec-protected communication channels. The current version is IKEv2.

Optionally, IPsec can use the IP Payload Compression Protocol (IPComp) to compress packet payloads before encrypting them, but this has not been widely used.

Only implementations of NIST-approved cryptographic algorithms specified in Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) or NIST Special Publications (SPs) and contained in FIPS-validated cryptographic modules shall be used in IPsec VPN deployments for compliance with this guidance. The FIPS 140 [13] specification defines how cryptographic modules will be validated. One requirement of FIPS 140 is that the module be capable of operating in a mode where all algorithms are NIST approved. NIST-approved algorithms are specified in a FIPS (e.g., FIPS 180, *Secure Hash Standard*) or in a NIST Special Publication (e.g., SP 800-56A, *Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm*

*Cryptography*). Some implementations can run in both FIPS mode and non-FIPS mode, so it is important to set and verify the mode of operation of the IKE and IPsec modules.

The Cryptographic Module Validation Program (CMVP) is a joint effort between NIST and the Communications Security Establishment (CSE) of the Government of Canada for the validation of cryptographic modules against FIPS 140-2 [13]. The Cryptographic Algorithm Validation Program (CAVP) provides validation testing of FIPS-approved and NIST-recommended cryptographic algorithms and their individual components. Cryptographic algorithm validation is a prerequisite of cryptographic module validation.

Cryptographic recommendations in this document are based on the time of publication of this document and may be superseded by other publications in the future. Appendix F contains a list of relevant FIPS, SPs, and Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standards related to IKE and IPsec.

Approved algorithms and their options for IKE and IPsec as of this writing are listed in Table 1:

**Table 1: Approved Algorithms and Options**

Option	Recommended	Legacy	Expected
<b>IKE</b>			
Version	IKEv2	IKEv1	
IKEv2 exchanges	All	-	
IKEv1 exchanges	Main Mode, Quick Mode	Aggressive Mode	
Encryption	AES-GCM, AES-CTR, AES-CBC, AES-CCM (128, 192, 256-bit keys)	TDEA	
Integrity/Pseudo Random Function (PRF)	HMAC-SHA-256, HMAC-SHA-384, HMAC-SHA-512	HMAC-SHA-1	HMAC-SHA-3
Diffie-Hellman (DH) group	DH 14 to DH 21 RFC [64] and RFC 5114 [65]		DH 31 and DH 32, RFC 8031 [72]
Peer authentication	RSA, DSA, and ECDSA with 128-bit security strength (for example, RSA with 3072-bit or larger key)	RSA, DSA, and ECDSA with less than 112 bits of security strength	
Lifetime	24 hours		
<b>IPsec</b>			
Mode	tunnel mode, transport mode		
Protocol	ESP, IPComp	AH	
Version	IPsec-v3	IPsec-v2	
Encryption	AES-GCM, AES-CTR, AES-CBC, AES-CCM, (128, 192, 256-bit keys)		
Integrity	HMAC-SHA-256, HMAC-SHA-384, HMAC-SHA-512, AES-GMAC		HMAC-SHA-3
Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)	Same or stronger DH as initial IKE DH		

Option	Recommended	Legacy	Expected
Lifetime	8 hours		

Some of the cryptographic requirements will change at the end of 2020, see SP 800-131A [47] for details. Therefore, Federal agencies who want to provide IPsec VPN services after 2020 must ensure that their systems are upgradeable to the new NIST-approved algorithms and key lengths before the end of 2020, and that their IPsec VPN vendors guarantee that such upgrades will be available early enough for testing and deployment in the field.

The strongest possible cryptographic algorithms and key lengths that are NIST-approved should be used for authentication, encryption, and integrity protection unless they are incompatible with interoperability, performance, and export constraints.

In addition to providing specific recommendations related to configuring cryptography for IPsec, this guide presents a phased approach to IPsec planning and implementation that can help in achieving successful IPsec deployments. The five phases of the approach are as follows:

1. **Identify Needs**—Identify the need to protect network communications and determine how that need can best be met.
2. **Design the Solution**—Make design decisions in four areas: architectural considerations, authentication methods, cryptography policy, and packet filters. The placement of an IPsec gateway has potential security, functionality, and performance implications. An authentication solution should be selected based primarily on maintenance, scalability, and security. Packet filters should apply appropriate protections to traffic and not protect other types of traffic for performance or functionality reasons.
3. **Implement and Test a Prototype**—Test a prototype of the designed solution in a lab or test environment to identify any potential issues. Testing should evaluate several factors, including connectivity, protection, authentication, application compatibility, management, logging, performance, the security of the implementation, and component interoperability.
4. **Deploy the Solution**—Gradually deploy IPsec throughout the enterprise. Existing network infrastructure, applications, and users should be moved incrementally over time to the new IPsec solution. This provides administrators an opportunity to evaluate the impact of the IPsec solution and resolve issues prior to enterprise-wide deployment.
5. **Manage the Solution**—Maintain the IPsec components and resolve operational issues; repeat the planning and implementation process when significant changes need to be incorporated into the solution.

As part of implementing IPsec, organizations should also implement additional technical, operational, and management controls that support and complement IPsec implementations. Examples include establishing control over all entry and exit points for the protected networks, ensuring the security of all IPsec endpoints, and incorporating IPsec considerations into organizational policies.

## Table of Contents

302		
303	<b>Executive Summary .....</b>	<b>v</b>
304	<b>1 Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
305	1.1 Purpose and Scope .....	1
306	1.2 Document Structure .....	1
307	<b>2 Network Layer Security .....</b>	<b>2</b>
308	2.1 The Need for Network Layer Security .....	2
309	2.2 The IPsec Protocol.....	5
310	2.3 Virtual Private Networking (VPN) .....	7
311	2.3.1 Confidentiality .....	7
312	2.3.2 Integrity.....	8
313	2.3.3 Establishment of Shared Secret Keys .....	8
314	2.3.4 Peer Authentication .....	8
315	2.3.5 Deployment Risks.....	9
316	2.4 Primary IPsec-Based VPN Architectures .....	10
317	2.4.1 Gateway-to-Gateway .....	10
318	2.4.2 Remote Access .....	12
319	2.4.3 Host-to-Host .....	13
320	2.5 Summary .....	17
321	<b>3 Internet Key Exchange (IKE) .....</b>	<b>19</b>
322	3.1 Overview of IKE .....	19
323	3.2 IKE Exchange Types .....	20
324	3.2.1 The IKE_SA_INIT Exchange .....	21
325	3.2.2 The IKE_AUTH Exchange.....	22
326	3.2.3 The CREATE_CHILD_SA Exchange .....	24
327	3.2.4 The INFORMATIONAL Exchange .....	24
328	3.3 IKE Authentication Models .....	25
329	3.3.1 Certificate-Based Authentication .....	25
330	3.3.2 Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP).....	26
331	3.3.3 Raw Public Key Authentication.....	26
332	3.3.4 Pre-shared Secret Key (PSK) Authentication .....	27
333	3.3.5 NULL Authentication.....	27

334	3.4	Network Address Translation (NAT) .....	28
335	3.5	IKE Fragmentation .....	28
336	3.6	Mobile IKE (MOBIKE) .....	29
337	3.7	Post-Quantum Preshared Keys (PPKs) .....	30
338	3.8	IKE Redirect.....	31
339	3.9	Differences Between IKEv2 and the Obsolete IKEv1.....	31
340	3.10	Manual Keying .....	33
341	3.11	IKE Summary.....	33
342	<b>4</b>	<b>The IPsec Protocols .....</b>	<b>34</b>
343	4.1	Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) .....	34
344	4.1.1	Tunnel Mode and Transport Mode .....	35
345	4.1.2	Encryption with Separate Integrity Protection.....	36
346	4.1.3	AEAD Encryption with Built-In Integrity.....	36
347	4.1.4	Common ESP Algorithms.....	37
348	4.1.5	ESP Packet Fields.....	37
349	4.1.6	How ESP Works .....	39
350	4.2	ESP Encapsulation .....	41
351	4.2.1	UDP Encapsulation of ESP .....	41
352	4.2.2	TCP Encapsulation of ESP .....	42
353	4.3	IP Payload Compression Protocol (IPComp) .....	42
354	4.4	Authentication Header (AH) .....	43
355	4.5	Summary .....	43
356	<b>5</b>	<b>Deployment of IPsec Using IKE .....</b>	<b>45</b>
357	5.1	IPsec States and Policies .....	45
358	5.1.1	The Security Association Database (SAD) .....	45
359	5.1.2	The Security Policy Database (SPD).....	47
360	5.1.3	SAD Message Types .....	49
361	5.2	Example of Establishing an IPsec Connection Using IKE.....	50
362	5.3	Procurement Considerations for IPsec Products .....	51
363	<b>6</b>	<b>Troubleshooting IPsec VPNs .....</b>	<b>53</b>
364	6.1	IKE Policy Exceptions .....	53
365	6.2	IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Policy Exception .....	53

366	6.3	Debugging IKE Configurations.....	54
367	6.4	Common Configuration Mistakes .....	54
368	6.5	Routing-Based VPNs Versus Policy-Based VPNs .....	55
369	6.6	Firewall Settings.....	56
370	<b>7</b>	<b>IPsec Planning and Implementation.....</b>	<b>57</b>
371	7.1	Identify Needs .....	58
372	7.2	Design the Solution.....	58
373	7.2.1	Architecture .....	59
374	7.2.2	IKE Authentication.....	64
375	7.2.3	Cryptography for Confidentiality Protection, Integrity Protection and	
376		Key Exchange .....	67
377	7.2.4	High Speed and Large Server Considerations .....	69
378	7.2.5	Packet Filter .....	72
379	7.2.6	Other Design Considerations .....	73
380	7.2.7	Summary of Design Decisions .....	76
381	7.3	Implement and Test Prototype.....	76
382	7.3.1	Component Interoperability .....	78
383	7.3.2	Security of the Implementation .....	80
384	7.4	Deploy the Solution.....	81
385	7.5	Manage the Solution .....	81
386	7.6	Summary .....	82
387	<b>8</b>	<b>Alternatives to IPsec.....</b>	<b>84</b>
388	8.1	Data Link Layer VPN Protocols .....	84
389	8.1.1	WiFi Data Link Protection .....	85
390	8.1.2	Media Access Control Security (MACsec).....	85
391	8.2	Transport Layer VPN Protocols (SSL VPNs) .....	86
392	8.2.1	Secure Socket Tunneling Protocol (SSTP).....	86
393	8.2.2	OpenConnect .....	87
394	8.2.3	OpenVPN .....	87
395	8.3	WireGuard .....	87
396	8.4	Secure Shell (SSH).....	88
397	8.5	Obsoleted and Deprecated VPN Protocols.....	89

398	8.5.1 Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) .....	89
399	8.5.2 Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP).....	89
400	8.6 Summary .....	90
401	<b>9 Planning and Implementation Case Studies.....</b>	<b>91</b>
402	9.1 Connecting a Remote Office to the Main Office .....	91
403	9.1.1 Identifying Needs and Evaluating Options .....	92
404	9.1.2 Designing the Solution.....	93
405	9.1.3 Implementing a Prototype.....	95
406	9.1.4 Analysis .....	98
407	9.2 Protecting Communications for Remote Users .....	99
408	9.2.1 Identifying Needs and Evaluating Options.....	100
409	9.2.2 Designing the Solution.....	101
410	9.2.3 Implementing a Prototype.....	103
411	9.2.4 Analysis .....	106
412	9.3 Remote Access to a Cloud Server Instance .....	107
413	9.3.1 Identifying Needs and Evaluating Options.....	107
414	9.3.2 Designing the Solution.....	108
415	9.3.3 Implementing a Prototype.....	109
416	9.3.4 Testing the Solution.....	110
417	9.3.5 Analysis .....	111
418	9.4 Cloud Encryption.....	111
419	9.4.1 Identifying Needs and Evaluating Options.....	112
420	9.4.2 Designing the Solution.....	113
421	9.4.3 Implementing a Prototype.....	114
422	9.4.4 Testing the Solution.....	115
423	9.4.5 Analysis .....	115
424	<b>10 Work In Progress .....</b>	<b>116</b>
425	10.1 Support for Multicast and Group Authentication .....	116
426	10.2 Labeled IPsec .....	116
427	10.3 ESP Implicit IV .....	116
428	10.4 The INTERMEDIATE Exchange .....	117
429	10.5 IPv4 and IPv6 Support in Remote Access VPNs .....	117

430	10.6 Post Quantum Key Exchange .....	117
-----	--------------------------------------	-----

431

## 432 **List of Appendices**

433	<b>Appendix A— Required Configuration Parameters for IKE and IPsec .....</b>	<b>118</b>
-----	--	------------

434	<b>Appendix B— Policy Considerations .....</b>	<b>119</b>
-----	--	------------

435	B.1 Communications with a Remote Office Network .....	119
-----	---	-----

436	B.1.1 IPsec Gateway Devices and Management Servers .....	119
-----	--	-----

437	B.1.2 Hosts and People Using the IPsec Tunnel .....	120
-----	---	-----

438	B.2 Communications with a Business Partner Network.....	120
-----	---	-----

439	B.2.1 Interconnection Agreement .....	121
-----	---------------------------------------	-----

440	B.2.2 IPsec Gateway Devices and Management Servers .....	122
-----	--	-----

441	B.2.3 Hosts and People Using the IPsec Tunnel .....	122
-----	---	-----

442	B.3 Communications for Individual Remote Hosts .....	122
-----	--	-----

443	B.3.1 Remote Access Policy.....	123
-----	---------------------------------	-----

444	B.3.2 IPsec Gateway Devices and Management Servers .....	123
-----	--	-----

445	<b>Appendix C— Case Study Configuration Files.....</b>	<b>125</b>
-----	--	------------

446	C.1 Section 9.1 Case Study Cisco Configuration .....	125
-----	--	-----

447	C.2 Section 9.1 Case Study Alternative Using strongSwan on FreeBSD .....	126
-----	--	-----

448	C.3 Section 9.1 Case Study Alternative Using libreswan on Linux.....	127
-----	--	-----

449	C.4 Section 9.1 Case Study Alternative Usingiked on OpenBSD .....	128
-----	---	-----

450	<b>Appendix D— Glossary .....</b>	<b>129</b>
-----	-----------------------------------	------------

451	<b>Appendix E— Acronyms and Abbreviations .....</b>	<b>131</b>
-----	---	------------

452	<b>Appendix F— References .....</b>	<b>136</b>
-----	-------------------------------------	------------

453

## 454 **List of Figures**

455	Figure 1: IP Layers .....	3
-----	---------------------------	---

456	Figure 2: Gateway-to-Gateway VPN Architecture Example .....	11
-----	---	----

457	Figure 3: Remote Access VPN Architecture Example .....	12
-----	--	----

458	Figure 4: Host-to-Host VPN Architecture Example .....	14
-----	---	----

459	Figure 5: SDWAN Architecture Example.....	16
-----	---	----

460	Figure 6: The IKEv2 Packet Format .....	20
-----	---	----



461	Figure 7: ESP Tunnel Mode Packet .....	35
462	Figure 8: ESP Transport Mode Packet.....	36
463	Figure 9: ESP Packet Fields .....	39
464	Figure 10: ESP Packet Capture Using Wireshark, Showing Sequence Number 1.....	40
465	Figure 11: tcpdump Capture of ping, IKE, and ESP Packets .....	41
466	Figure 12: Example of an ESP IPsec SA (Inbound and Outbound) Using an AEAD	
467	Algorithm on Linux .....	46
468	Figure 13: Example of an ESP IPsec SA Using a Non-AEAD Algorithm on FreeBSD ..	47
469	Figure 14: Examples of Policies Corresponding to Figure 12 on Linux .....	48
470	Figure 15: Example of IPsec Policies for a Gateway Architecture Connecting IPv4	
471	Subnets using IPv6 on Linux.....	49
472	Figure 16: IP Layers .....	84
473	Figure 17: Gateway-to-Gateway VPN for Remote Office Connectivity.....	94
474	Figure 18: Remote Access VPN for Protecting Communications.....	102
475		

## **List of Tables**

477	Table 1: Approved Algorithms and Options.....	vii
478	Table 2: Design Decisions Checklist .....	76
479		

## **1 Introduction**

### **1.1 Purpose and Scope**

This publication seeks to assist organizations in mitigating the risks associated with the transmission of sensitive information across networks by providing practical guidance on implementing security services based on Internet Protocol Security (IPsec). This document presents information that is independent of particular hardware platforms, operating systems, and applications, other than providing real-world examples to illustrate particular concepts. Specifically, the document includes a discussion of the need for network layer security services, then focuses on how IPsec provides them and how organizations can implement IPsec. The document uses a case-based approach to show how IPsec can be used to provide security for different scenarios. It also describes alternatives to IPsec and discusses the circumstances under which each alternative may be appropriate.

### **1.2 Document Structure**

The remainder of this document is organized into the following sections and appendices:

- Section 2 discusses the need for network layer security, introduces the concept of virtual private networking (VPN), and defines the primary VPN architectures for IPsec.
- Section 3 explains the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol.
- Section 4 covers the fundamentals of IPsec protocols, focusing on Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP).
- Section 5 describes the interactions between the IKE and IPsec subsystems.
- Section 6 provides information on troubleshooting common situations with IPsec VPNs.
- Section 7 points out issues to be considered during IPsec planning and implementation.
- Section 8 discusses several alternatives to IPsec and describes when each method may be appropriate.
- Section 9 presents several IPsec planning and implementation case studies that show how IPsec could be used in various scenarios.
- Section 10 briefly discusses future directions for IPsec.
- Appendix A defines the required configuration parameters for IKE and IPsec.
- Appendix B discusses the needs for IPsec-related policy and provides examples of common IPsec policy considerations.
- Appendix C contains configuration files referenced by the case studies in Section 9.
- Appendices D and E contain a glossary and acronym list, respectively.
- Appendix F lists the references.

## 2 Network Layer Security

This section provides a general introduction to *network layer security*—protecting network communications at the layer that is responsible for routing packets across networks. It first introduces the Internet Protocol (IP) model and its layers, then discusses the need to use security controls at each layer to protect communications. It provides a brief introduction to IPsec, primarily focused on the types of protection IPsec can provide for communications. This section also provides a brief introduction to VPN services and explains what types of protection a VPN can provide. It introduces different VPN architectures and discusses the features and common uses of each one.<sup>1</sup>

### 2.1 The Need for Network Layer Security

*IP networking* (sometimes called TCP/IP, although it encompasses more than just TCP, the Transmission Control Protocol) is the standard used throughout the world to provide network communications. IP communications are roughly composed of four layers that work together. When a user wants to transfer data across networks, the data is passed from the highest layer through intermediate layers to the lowest layer, with each layer adding additional information.<sup>2</sup> The lowest layer sends the accumulated data through the physical network; the data is then passed up through the layers to its destination. Essentially, the data produced by a layer is encapsulated in a larger container by the layer below it. The four IP layers, from highest to lowest, are shown in Figure 1.

**Application Layer.** This layer sends and receives data for particular applications, such as Domain Name System (DNS), web traffic via Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) and HTTP Secure (HTTPS), and email via Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) and the Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP).

**Transport Layer.** This layer provides connection-oriented or connectionless services for transporting application layer services between networks. The transport layer can optionally assure the reliability of communications. The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), which provides reliable connection-oriented communications, and the User Datagram Protocol (UDP), which provides unreliable connectionless communications, are commonly used transport layer protocols.

---

<sup>1</sup> This document discusses only the most common VPN scenarios and uses of IPsec.

<sup>2</sup> At each layer, the logical units are typically composed of a header and a payload. The payload consists of the information passed down from the previous layer, while the header contains layer-specific information such as addresses. At the application layer, the payload is the actual application data.

**Network Layer.** This layer routes packets across networks. The Internet Protocol (IP) is the fundamental network layer protocol for TCP/IP. Other commonly used protocols at the network layer are the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) and the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP).

**Data Link Layer.** This layer handles communications between the physical network components. The best-known data link layer protocols are Ethernet and the various WiFi standards such as the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) 802.11.

**Figure 1: IP Model**

Security controls exist for network communications at each layer of the IP model. As previously explained, data is passed from the highest to the lowest layer, with each layer adding more information. Because of this, a security control at a higher layer cannot provide full protection for lower layers, because the lower layers perform functions of which the higher layers are not aware. The following items discuss the security controls that are available at each layer:

- **Application Layer.** Separate controls must be established for each application. For example, if an application needs to protect sensitive data sent across networks, the application may need to be modified to provide this protection. While this provides a high degree of control and flexibility over the application's security, it may require a large resource investment to add and configure controls properly for each application.

Designing a cryptographically sound application protocol is very difficult, and implementing it properly is even more challenging, so creating new application layer security controls is likely to create vulnerabilities. Also, some applications, particularly commercial off-the-shelf (COTS) software, may not be capable of providing such protection.

While application layer controls can protect application data, they cannot protect communication metadata, such as source and destination IP addresses, because this information exists at a lower layer. Whenever possible, application layer controls for protecting network communications should be standards-based solutions that have been in use for some time. One example is Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME) [14], which is commonly used to encrypt email messages. Another example is the Secure Shell (SSH) [15] protocol that encrypts remote login sessions.

- **Transport Layer.** Controls at this layer can be used to protect the data in a single communication session between two hosts, often called a *netflow*. Because IP information is added at the network layer, transport layer controls cannot protect it. In the past there have been many protocols that protect different netflows, but the current best practice is to use Transport Layer Security (TLS) [16] to protect TCP streams, and Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) [17] to protect UDP datagrams.

The use of DTLS or TLS typically requires each application to support DTLS or TLS; however, unlike application layer controls, which typically involve extensive customization of the application, transport layer controls such as DTLS and TLS are less intrusive because they simply protect network communications and do not need to understand the application's functions or characteristics. Although using DTLS or TLS may require modifying some applications, these protocols are well-tested and are a relatively low-risk option compared to adding protection at the application layer instead.

Alternatively, an application could use a TLS proxy instead of building native support for DTLS or TLS. The transport layer can only provide transport security, not data origin security. For example, a TLS-based connection between two email servers protects the transport from eavesdroppers but does not protect the message content transmitted within that TLS connection from manipulation by one of the two email servers. DTLS and TLS are sometimes deployed as a generic VPN solution protecting all IP traffic instead of only protecting a netflow. Such VPNs, commonly called SSL-based VPNs, work on the network layer but use an application at the transport layer.

- **Network Layer.** Controls at this layer apply to all applications and are not application-specific. For example, all network communications between two hosts or networks can be protected at this layer without modifying any applications on the clients or the servers. In many environments, network layer controls such as IPsec provide a much better solution than transport or application layer controls because of the difficulties in adding controls to individual applications. Network layer controls also provide a way for network administrators to enforce certain security policies.

Another advantage of network layer controls is that since IP information (e.g., IP addresses) is added at this layer, the controls can protect both the data within the packets and the IP information for each packet. However, network layer controls provide less control and flexibility for protecting specific applications than transport and application layer controls.

- **Data Link Layer.** Data link layer controls are applied to all communications on a specific physical link, such as a dedicated circuit between two buildings or a WiFi network. Data link layer controls for dedicated circuits are most often provided by specialized hardware devices known as *data link encryptors*; data link layer controls for WiFi networks are usually provided through WiFi chipset firmware. Because the data link layer is below the network layer, controls at this layer can protect both data and IP information.

Compared to controls at the other layers, data link layer controls are relatively simple, which makes them easier to implement; also, they support other network layer protocols besides IP. Because data link layer controls are specific to a particular physical link or local WiFi signal, they are poorly suited to protecting connections to remote endpoints, such as establishing a VPN over the Internet.

An Internet-based connection is typically composed of several physical links chained together; protecting such a connection with data link layer controls would involve many parties and different protocols for each part of the physical chain. It is easier to consider the internet as a whole to be untrustworthy and use controls at the network, transport, or application layer. Data link layer protocols have been used for many years primarily to provide additional protection for specific physical links that should not be trusted.

Because network layer security controls can provide protection for many applications at once without modifying them, these controls have been used frequently for securing communications, particularly over shared networks such as the Internet. Network layer security controls provide a single solution for protecting all data from all applications, as well as protecting IP address, protocol, and port information. However, in many cases, controls at another layer are better suited to providing protection than network layer controls. For example, if only one or two applications need protection, a network layer control may be overkill. An application is often not aware of the (lack of) protection offered by the network or data link layer. Controls at each layer offer advantages and features that controls at other layers do not. Information on data link, transport, and application layer alternatives to network layer controls is provided in Section 8.

## 2.2 The IPsec Protocol

IPsec has emerged as the most commonly used network layer security control for protecting communications. IPsec is a framework of open standards for ensuring private communications over IP networks. The Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol is used to securely negotiate IPsec parameters and encryption keys. IKE is described in Section 3.

The IPsec Working Group at the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) is responsible for maintaining and publishing the standards for IKE and IPsec. Documents produced by IETF Working Groups are defined in two types of documents: Request for Comment (RFC), which are completed specifications; and Internet-Drafts, which are working documents that may become RFCs. IKEv2 is specified in [18]. The Encapsulating Security Protocol (ESP), the core IPsec security protocol, is specified in [19]. Algorithm implementation and usage guidelines are specified in [20] for IKEv2 and in [21] for IPsec. Various extensions to IKEv2 have their own RFC specifications. The IKE and IPsec protocols originated at the IETF almost three decades ago. Some of their history, such as the difference between IPsec-v2 and IPsec-v3, has been documented in the IPsec roadmap document [22].

Depending on how IPsec is implemented and configured, it can provide any combination of the following types of protection:

- **Confidentiality.** IPsec ensures that data cannot be read by unauthorized parties. This is accomplished by encrypting and decrypting data using a cryptographic algorithm and a secret key—a value known only to the two parties exchanging data. The data can only be decrypted by someone who has the secret key. While it is possible to use IPsec without encryption, it is not recommended.

- 649 • **Integrity.** IPsec determines if data has been changed (intentionally or unintentionally)  
650 during transit. The integrity of data can be assured by generating a message  
651 authentication code (MAC) value, which is a cryptographic checksum (hash) of the data  
652 made with a mutually agreed secret key (different from the encryption secret key). If the  
653 data is altered and the MAC's verification will fail.
- 654 • **Confidentiality and Integrity.** Both types of checks can be combined into one  
655 Authenticated Encryption with Associated Data (AEAD) algorithm. This combines  
656 symmetric encryption and cryptographic checksums into one process. Both parties still  
657 need to have the same secret key and additional data.
- 658 • **Peer Authentication.** Each IPsec endpoint confirms the identity of the other IPsec  
659 endpoint with which it wishes to communicate, ensuring that the network traffic and data  
660 is only transmitted to the expected and authorized endpoint.
- 661 • **Replay Protection.** The same data will not be accepted multiple times, and data is not  
662 accepted grossly out of order. This prevents attackers from copying and retransmitting  
663 valid IPsec encrypted data for malicious purposes. IPsec (like UDP) does not ensure that  
664 data is delivered in the exact order in which it was sent. The receiver has a Replay  
665 Window where it will store out of order received messages before decrypting and  
666 delivering these messages to the operating system in the right order.
- 667 • **Traffic Analysis Protection.** When IPsec's tunnel mode is used (see Section 4.1.1), a  
668 person monitoring network traffic does not know which parties are communicating, how  
669 often communications are occurring, or how much data is being exchanged. While the  
670 number and size of the encrypted packets being exchanged can be counted, the traffic  
671 flow confidentiality (TFC) capabilities of ESP can pad all packets to a single length  
672 (usually the maximum transmission unit [MTU]), and dummy packets can be sent to  
673 further obfuscate the timing of the actual communication.
- 674 • **Access Control.** IPsec endpoints can perform filtering to ensure that only authorized  
675 IPsec users can access particular network resources. IPsec endpoints can also allow or  
676 block certain types of network traffic, such as allowing Web server access but denying  
677 file sharing. This is called *policy-based IPsec*. *Routing-based IPsec* accepts all traffic at  
678 the IPsec policy layer, but both endpoints filter valid traffic by setting routes into a  
679 specific IPsec interface. In other words, the routing table acts as the policy filter.  
  
680 Policy-based IPsec is more secure than routing-based IPsec, as the security of the policy  
681 works independently from the security of the remote endpoint. Policy-based IPsec is not  
682 vulnerable to accidental or malicious routing table changes, and it prevents leaking  
683 packets to the local network, since local packets do not use the routing table. IPsec-based  
684 access control works independently from other access control mechanisms, such as  
685 firewall services or other mandatory access control mechanisms.
- 686 • **Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS).** IPsec endpoints create session keys that are changed  
687 frequently, typically once an hour. Afterwards, the endpoints wipe the old session keys  
688 from volatile memory, and no entities are left with a copy of these private decryption  
689 keys. Since expired keys are not saved, any encrypted traffic monitored and stored cannot

be decrypted at a later time by compromising an IPsec endpoint and obtaining the encryption/decryption keys belonging to past IPsec sessions.

Normally, new keys are generated based on the generated shared secret of the original key exchange using a key derivation function (KDF). To guarantee that new key material has no relationship to the old key exchange, fresh session keys can, optionally, be generated by performing a new Diffie-Hellman (DH) key exchange instead of reusing the old key exchange's generated shared secret to generate new session keys. This method of using a fresh key exchange provides *perfect forward secrecy (PFS)*.

- **Mobility.** The outer IP address of an endpoint can change without causing an interruption of the encrypted data flow. Since the application is communicating using the inner (encrypted) IP address, it does not matter that the outer IP address changes. This allows a device to switch from WiFi to Ethernet to mobile data without application interruption.

## 2.3 Virtual Private Networking (VPN)

The most common use of IPsec implementations is providing VPN services. A *VPN* is a virtual network, built on top of existing physical networks, that can provide a secure communications mechanism for data and IP information transmitted between networks or between different nodes on the same network. Because a VPN can be used over existing networks, such as the Internet, it can facilitate the secure transfer of sensitive data across public networks. This is often less expensive than alternatives such as dedicated private telecommunication links between organizations or branch offices. Since dedicated private communication lines are often multi-tenant solutions themselves, such as those partitioned via Multi-Protocol Label Switching (MPLS) [23] and run by third-party telecommunication companies, even those dedicated links are now usually protected by an IPsec VPN. Remote access VPNs provide flexible solutions, such as securing communications between remote workers and the organization's servers. A VPN can be established within a single network to protect particularly sensitive communications from other parties on the same network, or even deploy a mesh of IPsec connections between all nodes in a single network so that no unencrypted data ever appears on the network. Section 2.4 discusses these different deployment models.

Below are further discussions of the cryptographic security services provided by IPsec for VPNs.

### 2.3.1 Confidentiality

VPNs use symmetric cryptography to encrypt and decrypt their command and data channels. Symmetric cryptography is generally more efficient and requires less processing power than asymmetric cryptography, which is why symmetric encryption is typically used to encrypt the bulk of the data being sent over a VPN. NIST-approved algorithms that implement symmetric encryption include Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) and Triple Data Encryption Standard



(3DES)<sup>3</sup>. One of the NIST-approved symmetric encryption algorithms is AES-Galois Counter Mode (AES-GCM); see Table 1 for the other NIST-approved symmetric encryption algorithms.

### 2.3.2 Integrity

Integrity is provided by a message authentication algorithm. The algorithm takes input data and a secret integrity key and produces a message authentication code (MAC). The data and MAC are sent across the network. The receiver calculates the MAC on the received data using the same secret integrity key (which has been previously established between the sender and receiver). If there is any change in the message or/and its MAC, a verification of the MAC will fail, and the message can be discarded. Common algorithms that implement integrity protection are:

- The keyed-hash message authentication code (HMAC) algorithm specified in FIPS 198 [24], which uses a hash function from FIPS 180 [25] (i.e., Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA): SHA-1 or the SHA-2 family of hash functions)<sup>4</sup>
- A mode of AES, as specified in FIPS 197 [26]. Included modes are AES-Cipher Block Chaining (AES-XCBC),<sup>5</sup> AES-Cipher-Based Message Authentication Code (AES-CMAC) [27], and AES-Galois Message Authentication Code (AES-GMAC) [28]

### 2.3.3 Establishment of Shared Secret Keys

VPNs typically use the DH key exchange algorithm to create a confidential communication channel to calculate a shared key between the two endpoints that an eavesdropper cannot obtain or compute. DH key exchanges can be based on finite field cryptography (“classic” or “modular” DH) or on elliptic curve (ECDH). After performing the DH key exchange and calculating the shared key, the endpoints still need to authenticate to each other to ensure that the confidential communication channel is set up with the expected party, and not somebody else.

### 2.3.4 Peer Authentication

A digital signature algorithm is used for peer authentication. It uses two separate keys: a public key and a private key. The private key is used to digitally sign the data, and the public key is used to verify the digital signature. These keys are often referred to as *public/private key pairs*. When an individual’s private key is used to digitally sign data, only that same individual’s corresponding public key can be used to verify the digital signature. Common algorithms that are used to generate and verify digital signatures include RSA, the Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA), and the Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (ECDSA).<sup>6</sup> NIST-approved digital signature algorithms are specified in [29].

---

<sup>3</sup> Triple DES is deprecated and is expected to be disallowed in the near future.

<sup>4</sup> The term HMAC-SHA-2 is used to describe three members of the HMAC-SHA-2 family, HMAC-SHA256, HMAC-SHA384 and HMAC-SHA512

<sup>5</sup> While commonly deployed on Internet of Things (IoT) devices, AES-XCBC is not a NIST-approved integrity algorithm.

<sup>6</sup> NIST-approved algorithms must also be used for digital signatures. See <https://csrc.nist.gov/projects/cryptographic-algorithm-validation-program> for information on such algorithms.

VPNs usually use asymmetric cryptography for identity authentication. This can be in the form of raw public/private key pair or X.509 certificate-based public/private key pair. A VPN entity is authenticated by proving it has possession of the private key of a known public/private key pair as well as the secret key computed by the parties during the DH key exchange. This binds the private communication channel (i.e., the VPN) to the expected identities. The public key can verify this proof without having a copy of the private key. Thus, as long as both parties each have the other's public key and their own private key, they can establish an authenticated private channel through which they can communicate.

A less secure method of identity authentication is using a preshared key (PSK). Parties authenticate each other's identity based on the fact that no one else has possession of this shared key, which must be established out-of-band.<sup>7</sup> A VPN entity's identity is authenticated by proving that it has possession of the PSK as well as the secret key computed by the parties during the DH key exchange. This binds the private communication channel to the expected identities. The main disadvantage of VPNs using PSKs for authentication is that all parties that know the PSK can impersonate every other party in the group. PSKs are also vulnerable to online and offline dictionary attacks. That means that PSKs must be highly random (providing at least 112 bits of security strength) and must not be based on simple words or phrases, otherwise an attacker observing the key exchange can attempt to use an offline brute force attack to find the PSK by calculating the authentication payload based on dictionary words and comparing the generated authentication payloads to the observed authentication payload. Unfortunately, experience has shown that administrators often use weak PSKs that are vulnerable to dictionary attacks.

### 2.3.5 Deployment Risks

VPNs do not remove all risk from networking, particularly for communications that occur over public networks. One potential problem is the strength of the implementation. For example, flaws in an encryption algorithm or the software implementing the algorithm could allow attackers to decrypt intercepted traffic, and random number generators that do not produce sufficiently random values could provide additional attack possibilities. Another issue is encryption key disclosure; an attacker who discovers a symmetric key could decrypt previously recorded or current traffic. An attacker obtaining the private key of a public/private key pair (or PSK) used for identity authentication could potentially pose as a legitimate user.

Another area of risk involves availability. A common model for information assurance is based on the concepts of confidentiality, integrity, and availability. Although VPNs are designed to support confidentiality and integrity, they generally do not improve availability, the ability for authorized users to access systems as needed. In fact, many VPN implementations actually tend to decrease availability somewhat because they add more components, complexity, and services to the existing network infrastructure.

---

<sup>7</sup> *Out-of-band* refers to using a separate communications mechanism to transfer information. For example, the VPN cannot be used to exchange the keys securely because the keys are required to provide the necessary protection.

792 Risks are highly dependent upon the chosen VPN architecture and the details of the  
793 implementation. Section 2.4 describes the primary VPN architectures.

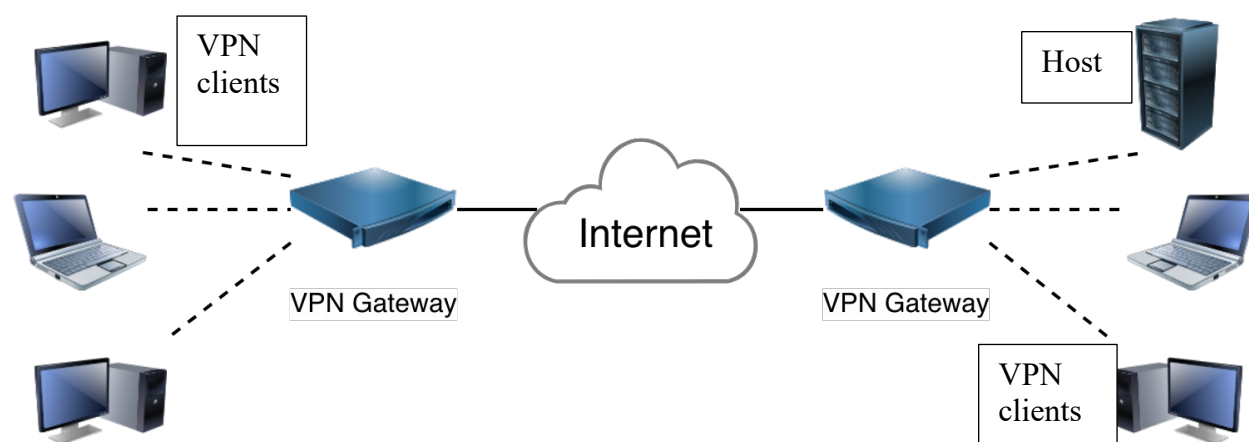
## 794 **2.4 Primary IPsec-Based VPN Architectures**

795 There are four primary architectures for IPsec-based VPNs:

- 796 • Gateway-to-gateway
- 797 • Remote access
- 798 • Host-to-host
- 799 • Mesh

### 800 **2.4.1 Gateway-to-Gateway**

801 IPsec-based VPNs are often used to provide secure network communications between two  
802 networks. This is typically done by deploying a VPN gateway onto each network and  
803 establishing a VPN connection between the two gateways. Traffic between the two networks that  
804 needs to be secured passes within the established VPN connection between the two VPN  
805 gateways. The VPN gateway may be a dedicated device that only performs VPN functions, or it  
806 may be part of another network device, such as a firewall or router. Figure 2 shows an example  
807 of an IPsec network architecture that uses the gateway-to-gateway model to provide a protected  
808 connection between the two networks.



**Figure 2: Gateway-to-Gateway VPN Architecture Example**

This model is relatively simple to understand. To facilitate VPN connections, one of the VPN gateways issues a request to the other to establish an IPsec connection. The two VPN gateways exchange information with each other and create an IPsec connection. Routing on each network is configured so that as hosts on one network need to communicate with hosts on the other network, their network traffic is automatically routed through the IPsec connection, protecting it appropriately. A single IPsec connection establishing a tunnel between the gateways can support all communications between the two networks, or multiple IPsec connections can each protect different types or classes of traffic. The gateways connect to each other using IPv4 or IPv6 protocols. When using tunnel mode, the IP address family of the outer ESP packets transmitted between the gateways does not need to be the same as the IP address family of the encrypted IP packets. For example, an IPsec connection between the hosts on IPv6 addresses 2001:db8:1:2::45 and 2001:db8:1:2::23 could be used to transport IPv4 traffic from 192.0.2.0/24 to 198.51.100.0/24. These types of IPsec connections are often called 6in4 or 4in6 to denote the inner and outer IP families.

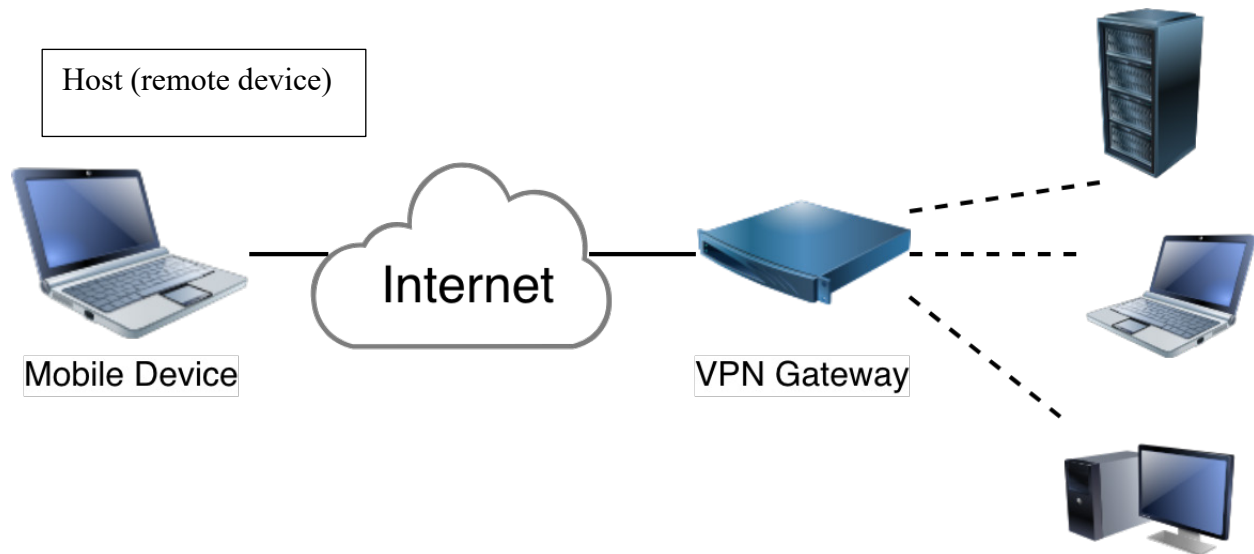
Figure 2 illustrates a gateway-to-gateway VPN that does not provide full protection for data throughout its transit. In fact, the gateway-to-gateway architecture only protects data between the two gateways, as denoted by the solid line. The dashed lines indicate that communications between VPN clients and their local gateway, and between the remote gateway and destination hosts (e.g., servers) are not protected by the gateway-to-gateway architecture. The other VPN models provide protection for more of the transit path. The gateway-to-gateway architecture is most often used when connecting two secured networks, such as linking a branch office to headquarters over the Internet. The gateway-to-gateway architecture is the easiest to implement in terms of user and host management. Gateway-to-gateway VPNs are typically transparent to users; the use of a gateway-to-gateway VPN connection is not noticeable to them. Also, the users' systems and the target hosts (e.g., servers) do not need to have any VPN client software installed, nor should they require any reconfiguration, to be able to use the VPN.

If the gateway-to-gateway VPN connects two different organizations, it is possible that some special DNS configuration is required if machines in one network need to be able to reach

839 machines in the other network by DNS name. If machines are found by their IP address, no  
 840 special DNS handling is required.

## 841 2.4.2 Remote Access

842 An increasingly common VPN architecture is the remote access architecture. The organization  
 843 deploys a VPN gateway onto its network; each remote access user then establishes a VPN  
 844 connection between their device (host) and the VPN gateway. As with the gateway-to-gateway  
 845 architecture, the VPN gateway may be a dedicated device or part of another network device.  
 846 Figure 3 shows an example of an IPsec remote access architecture that provides a protected  
 847 connection for the remote user.



848

**Figure 3: Remote Access VPN Architecture Example**

849 In this model, IPsec connections are created as needed for each individual mobile device, which  
 850 have been configured to act as IPsec clients with the organization's IPsec gateway. When a  
 851 remote user wishes to use computing resources through the VPN, the host initiates  
 852 communications with the VPN gateway. The user is typically asked by the VPN gateway to  
 853 authenticate his identity before the connection can be established. The VPN gateway can perform  
 854 the authentication itself or consult a dedicated authentication server. The client (the remote  
 855 device in Figure 3) and gateway exchange information, and the IPsec connection is established.  
 856 The user can now use the organization's computing resources, and the network traffic between  
 857 the user's host (the remote device in Figure 3) and the VPN gateway will be protected by the  
 858 IPsec connection.

859 Some organizations do not want to receive all the internet traffic generated by a remote host. If  
 860 that host is browsing the internet, that traffic will not go through the VPN connection. Only  
 861 traffic for the organization itself will be sent over the VPN connection. This is called a *split-*  
 862 *tunnel VPN*. Other organizations do not trust the remote hosts to directly communicate with the  
 863 internet while being connected via a VPN connection to the organizational computer resources,  
 864 since that Internet connection could be used to attack or infiltrate the VPN connection. If an

organization normally has a strict firewall preventing unauthorized access by the hosts in the local network, it would not want a remote host to bypass this security when it is connecting from a remote location. In that case, a remote host will send all its traffic via the VPN connection to the VPN gateway; this allows IPsec protection to be applied to this traffic as well. Traffic received and decrypted by the VPN gateway that is not meant for the local organization can be sent further to the organization's firewall for inspection, and then sent onwards through the organization's internet connection. Reply traffic similarly will flow back via the organization's firewall to the VPN gateway and will then be sent via the VPN connection to the remote host.

As shown in Figure 3, the remote access VPN does not provide full protection for data throughout its transit. The dashed lines indicate that communications between the gateway and the destination hosts (e.g., servers) on the right side of the figure are not protected. The remote access VPN architecture is most often used when connecting hosts on unsecured networks to resources on secured networks, such as linking traveling employees around the world to headquarters over the Internet. The remote access VPN is somewhat complex to implement and maintain in terms of user and host management (the VPN gateway ( or a designated device) must manage credentials of all of the remote machines (hosts) and their authorized users and all of these might change often.) Remote access VPNs are typically not transparent to users because they must authenticate before using the VPN. Also, the user's device needs to have a VPN connection configured. Some devices do not allow more than one VPN connection to be active at a time.

Remote access users can find themselves on networks that, intentionally or not, cause VPN connections to fail. Some unintentional failures can be worked around by always having the latest software and IPsec VPN features supported.<sup>8</sup> Standard IKE runs over the UDP protocol, and ESP can also use UDP. Some networks block all UDP packets, causing IKE and ESP-over-UDP traffic to be dropped. As a method of last resort, IPsec communication can be tunneled over TCP, which is a more universally accepted protocol. For added insurance, TLS can be used in conjunction with TCP to work around network failures with native IPsec packets.

Modern devices often have more than one network interface, and the user can switch between different network interfaces automatically. For instance, when a mobile device loses a WiFi connection, it can automatically fall back to a mobile network (LTE/5G) provider. IPsec provides mobility support to ensure that the VPN connection keeps working without interruption when switching between such networks.

### 2.4.3 Host-to-Host

The host-to-host VPN architecture is used for a variety of reasons. For security reasons, some hosts may only accept connections protected by a VPN. This makes it more secure against unauthenticated access attempts. For example, if the web server software on the host is

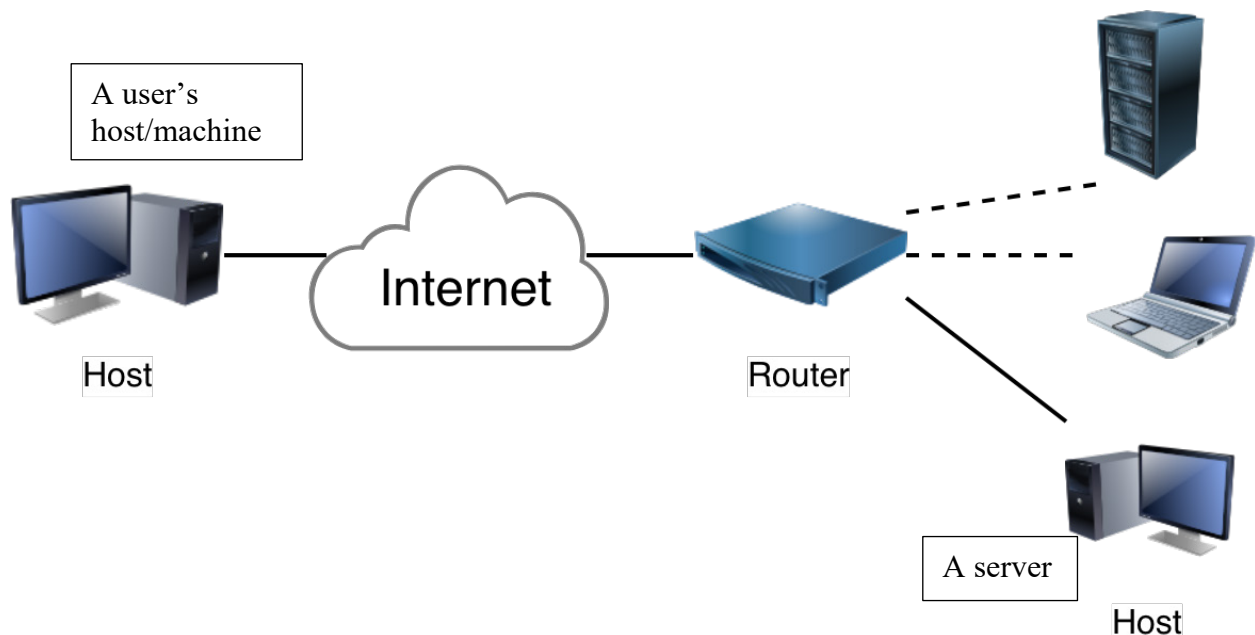
---

<sup>8</sup> A common unintentional breaking of IPsec happens when a network does not handle IP fragmentation correctly. This can cause the setup of the IPsec connection to fail. Modern implementations of IPsec support their own IKE fragmentation that ensures the network layer never needs to fragment IKE packets.

901 vulnerable to a specific attack, it is only exposed to those who also have VPN credentials to  
 902 contact the host. Another common issue is the presence of attackers performing port scans or  
 903 dictionary attacks against the login method (for example, SSH). With a VPN, these ports are not  
 904 accessible to attackers.

905 In this case, the organization configures the server to provide VPN services, and the system  
 906 administrators' machines (or some users' machine) to act as VPN clients. The system  
 907 administrators use the VPN client when needed to establish protected connections to the remote  
 908 server. Figure 4 shows an example of an IPsec network architecture that uses the host-to-host  
 909 architecture to provide a protected connection to a server for an administrator (or just a user). The  
 910 point of a host-to-host VPN connection is that the traffic is protected all the way from one end to  
 911 the other of the connection.

912 In this model, IPsec connections are created as needed for each individual VPN user. Users'  
 913 hosts have been configured to act as IPsec clients with a remote host that is server. When a user  
 914 wishes to use resources on the server, the user's host initiates IPsec communications with the  
 915 server. The server acts as an IPsec server that requests the user to authenticate before the  
 916 connection can be established. The user's host and the server exchange information, and if the  
 917 authentication is successful, the IPsec connection is established. The user can now access the  
 918 server, and the network traffic between the user's host and the server will be protected by the  
 919 IPsec connection.



**Figure 4: Host-to-Host VPN Architecture Example**

920 As shown in Figure 4, the host-to-host VPN provides protection for data throughout its transit.  
 921 This can be a problem because network-based firewalls, intrusion detection systems, and other  
 922 network devices cannot be deployed to inspect the traffic in transit, which effectively

circumvents certain layers of security.<sup>9</sup> The host-to-host VPN is most often used when a small number of trusted users need to use or administer a remote system that requires the use of insecure protocols (e.g., a legacy system) and which can be updated to provide VPN services.

Host-to-host VPNs can be resource-intensive to implement and maintain in terms of configuration management. Host-to-host VPNs are not transparent to users because they must authenticate the user before using the VPN. Also, all end user systems and servers that will participate in VPNs need to have VPN software installed and/or configured. However, the host-to-host architecture can be deployed in a more automated way that requires no end user interaction to establish a VPN.

A special case of host-to-host VPNs is a large-scale host-to-host IPsec deployment. This is typically used when one wants to encrypt all connections within a network, cloud, or datacenter. Whenever one node in such a network wishes to communicate with another node in the network, it first establishes an IPsec connection. This is also called *mesh encryption*. Usually, these IPsec connections are packet triggered. An application sends a packet to a remote host. The kernel of the host on which the application runs receives the packet from the application and determines that it does not have an IPsec connection to that remote host, so it triggers the setup of an IPsec connection. Once the IPsec connection is established, the packet is encrypted and sent to the remote host. This way, no unencrypted packet is ever sent over the network. Hosts authenticate each other using X.509 certificates or Domain Name System Security Extensions (DNSSEC). These types of authentication are based on a shared trust anchor, an X.509 certificate authority (CA) or a DNSSEC zone key. This allows hosts to be added to a network without the need to reconfigure all other hosts to learn about the newly deployed host.

One advantage of this type of IPsec architecture is that every host is responsible for its own protection; no large expensive IPsec gateways are required, which also means there is no single point of failure added to the network architecture. Hosts in a network can be configured to insist on IPsec, or to attempt IPsec but to allow cleartext communication if that fails. This architecture can be combined with the gateway-to-gateway architecture, where hosts within one network can initiate IPsec to hosts in the network, extending the network mesh encryption to both networks. The two networks are connected by a gateway-to-gateway architecture so the internet can still be used to connect these two networks, at the cost of packets being encrypted twice—once by the host-to-host deployment and once by the gateway-to-gateway deployment.

#### 2.4.3.1 SDN-Based VPN Encryption

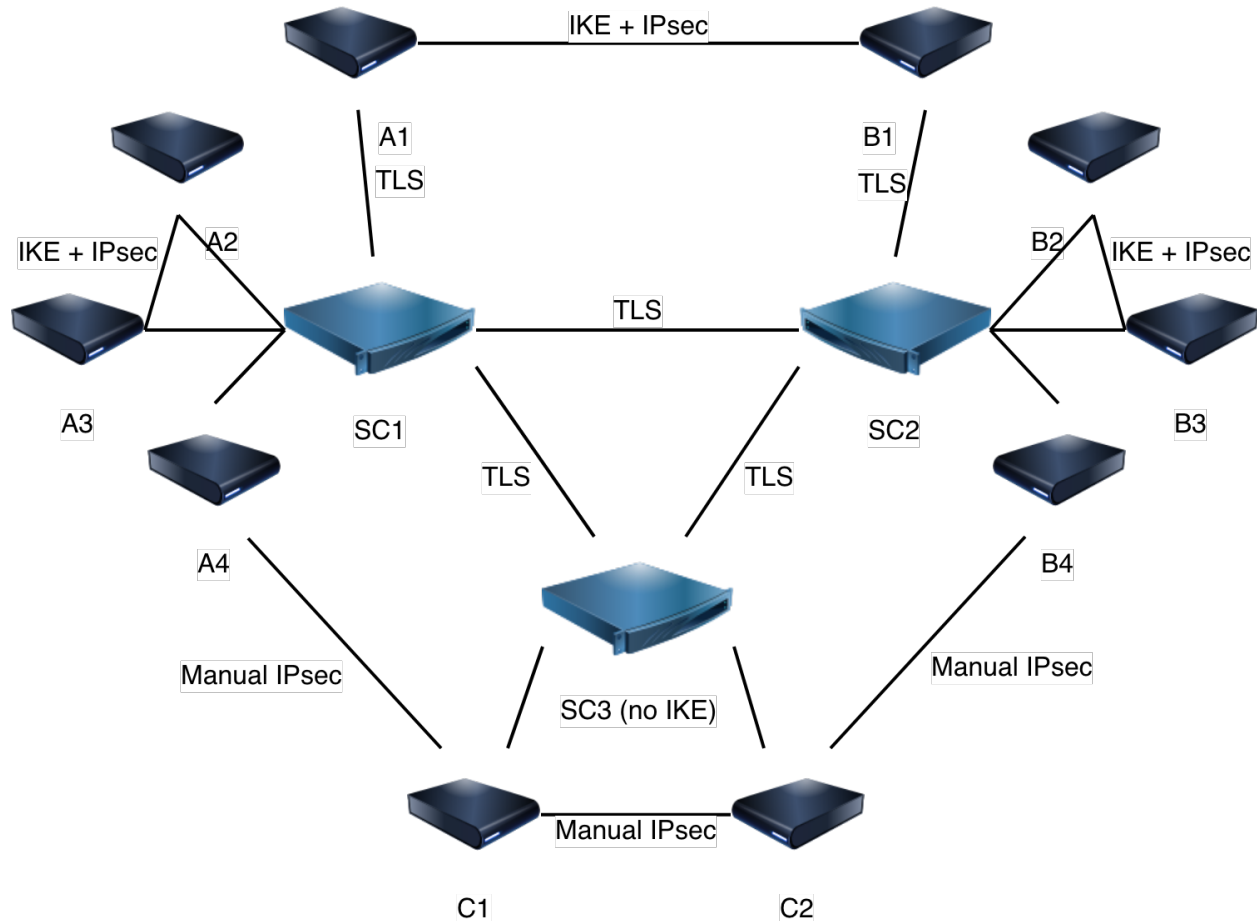
*Software Defined Networking* (SDN) is an architecture of dynamic cloud networking. An *SDN network* (sometimes called a *Software Defined Wide Area Network*, or *SDWAN*) is a network with a Security Controller and compute nodes. All the nodes (hosts) are configured by the Security Controller, usually via the Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF) [30]. For nodes within a network, or for nodes between two different networks, the node consults its local

---

<sup>9</sup> Device placement can also be an issue in remote access and gateway-to-gateway architectures, but in those architectures, it is usually possible to move devices or deploy additional devices to inspect decrypted data. This is not possible with a host-to-host architecture.



Security Controller. If the nodes have enough resources to set up IPsec, the Security Controllers can relay the authentication and connection parameters to their respective nodes, and the two nodes can then negotiate the IPsec VPN connection.



**Figure 5: SDWAN Architecture Example**

This is shown in Figure 5 for communication between the nodes A1 and B1 (at the top of the figure). Host A1 contacts its Security Controller SC1. SC1 and SC2 (host B1's Security Controller) negotiate the IKE and IPsec parameters and convey them to their respective hosts (A1 or B1, as appropriate). Host A1 can now initiate an IKE session with B1 and an IPsec connection is established between A1 and B1. The IPsec secret key material is only known by the A1 and B1 nodes and not by the Security Controller. The hosts could optionally transfer these secret keys to their Security Controller to facilitate monitoring via decryption by the Security Controller or another dedicated monitoring device that takes its configuration from the Security Controller.

If the hosts do not have enough resources to negotiate IPsec with many other nodes, each Security Controller can negotiate an IPsec connection on behalf of one of their hosts, and then give the keying material and security policies for the IPsec connection to that host. The two hosts

receive the exact IPsec policies and the same encryption keys from their Security Controllers to install in their IPsec subsystems (key exchange is performed by the 2 corresponding Security Controllers). This latter method is called an *IKEless IPsec connection*. It is not the preferred method since, in this case, the Security Controllers are aware of all the secret keys used by their hosts, and the Security Controllers (or whoever manages to get control of one of them) can decrypt all the host-to-host IPsec protected traffic or masquerade as one of the hosts under its control.

A third method for configuring hosts by a Security Controller is for the hosts to give their key-exchange public keys to the Security Controller. When two devices establish an IPsec connection, the Security Controller distributes each device's key-exchange public key and a nonce to the other device. Each of the two devices uses the public and nonce from the other device along with own private key to generate a secret shared key which is then used for an IPsec connection. The Security Controller does not know the private keys or the shared key of the IPsec devices. Therefore, the Security Controllers cannot decrypt any host-to-host communication and cannot masquerade as one of the hosts.<sup>10</sup>

#### 2.4.3.2 Anonymous IPsec VPN

The hardest part of rolling out an IPsec deployment is the authentication mechanisms, which depend on the prior deployment of a CA or other identity verifier. If a network only needs to protect itself against passive attackers—that is, attackers that can eavesdrop but not send their own malicious packets—then anonymous IPsec can be used. Therefore, anonymous IPsec connections are typically host-to-host connections and not gateway-based connections because an IPsec gateway typically requires authentication of the connecting host and authenticates itself to that host. A variant of this is server-only authenticated IPsec. This works similarly to regular HTTPS connections where a client connects to the server and the server has to authenticate itself to the client, but the client remains anonymous. Any client authentication then happens at the application layer, and not at the network layer.

The advantage of anonymous IPsec is that it can be rolled out quickly. Once in place and protecting against passive attackers, the configuration can be slowly migrated to an authenticated IPsec deployment that also protects against active attacks.

Due to its security risk, anonymous IPsec VPNs are discouraged by NIST.

## 2.5 Summary

Section 2 describes the IP model and its layers—application, transport, network, and data link—and explains how security controls at each layer provide different types of protection for IP communications. IPsec, a network layer security control, can provide several types of protection for data, depending on its configuration. The section describes VPNs and highlights the VPN architectures. IPsec is a framework of open standards for ensuring private communications over IP networks that is the standard used for network layer security control. It can provide several

---

<sup>10</sup> This is currently specified in an IETF draft document, draft-carrel-ipsecme-controller-ike [31].

1014 types of protection, including maintaining confidentiality and integrity, preventing packet replay  
1015 attacks and traffic analysis, and can incorporate access restrictions.

- 1016 • IKE is the protocol that is used to negotiate, update, and maintain IPsec connections.
- 1017 • A VPN is a virtual network built on top of existing networks that can provide a secure  
1018 communications mechanism for data and IP information transmitted between networks.
- 1019 • VPNs can be used to secure communication between individual hosts (host-to-host) or  
1020 between multiple networks (gateway-to-gateway), or to provide secure remote access for  
1021 mobile devices to a home or enterprise network. Hosts within a network can build a mesh  
1022 of IPsec connections between all nodes or can use a Security Controller to assist them  
1023 with building up VPN connections to other nodes.
- 1024 • Although VPNs can reduce the risks of operating over an insecure network, they cannot  
1025 eliminate it. For example, a VPN implementation may have flaws in algorithms or  
1026 software that attackers can exploit. Also, VPN implementations often have at least a  
1027 slightly negative impact on availability, because they add components and services to  
1028 existing network infrastructures.
- 1029

### 3 Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

When two hosts want to set up an IPsec connection with each other, they need to negotiate the parameters of the IPsec connection, such as the source and destination IP addresses that are allowed, the encryption algorithms to use, and the cryptographic key material to use for the encryption and decryption of packets. The hosts also need to authenticate each other. All of this is done using the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol. The version of the IKE protocol described in this section is IKE version 2 (IKEv2) and is specified in RFC 7296<sup>11</sup> [18]. The differences between IKEv1 and IKEv2 are described at the end of this section.

Typically, IKE runs as a privileged process, while IPsec usually runs as part of the operating system kernel. The IKE process is responsible for configuring the kernel for IPsec. The kernel is responsible for the actual packet encryption and decryption operations. The IKE process can insert a policy into the kernel that will instruct the kernel to warn the IKE process when an unencrypted packet matching certain source and destination IP addresses and/or other criteria is about to be transmitted. If the peers can mutually authenticate each other, and agree on other policy details, then the IKE process can negotiate an IPsec tunnel that covers this packet. This is used for creating IPsec tunnels on demand.

#### 3.1 Overview of IKE

The IKE protocol can be considered the command channel. The IPsec protocol is the data channel; it encrypts and decrypts the IP packets and verifies that the source and destination IP address conform to the negotiated policies. The IKE protocol command channel itself also needs to be encrypted to ensure the privacy of the parameters of the IPsec connection. In other words, first the IKE encrypted connection is established, and then one or more IPsec connections are established through the protected IKE command channel.<sup>12</sup> An IKE's connection establishment is called an *IKE Security Association* (IKE SA) [18].<sup>13</sup> An IPsec connection is called an *IPsec SA* or *Child SA*.<sup>14</sup> Both IKEv2 SAs and IPsec SAs are identified by their Security Parameters Index (SPI) numbers; for IKEv1, other fields are used as the SA identifier until the IPsec SPIs are established.

The IKE protocol consists of UDP messages on port 500 and 4500. As shown in Figure 6, each IKE packet consists of a fixed IKE header (the first five lines of the figure) followed by the variable-length IKE data.

<sup>11</sup> The base protocol is defined in [18], but many IKE extensions have their own RFCs.

<sup>12</sup> The IKEv2 protocol has been optimized to do some of this in parallel. As a result, the first IKE connection and the first IPsec connection are established at the same time.

<sup>13</sup> An IKE SA is also called a Parent SA. In IKEv1, these were called ISAKMP SA or "Phase 1".

<sup>14</sup> In IKEv1, these were called "Phase 2".

Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3	Byte 4
IKE SA Initiator's SPI			
IKE SA Responder's SPI			
Next Payload	Major IKE Version	Minor IKE Version	Exchange Type
Message ID			
Length of total message (IKE header plus data)			
IKE DATA			

Figure 6: The IKEv2 Packet Format

The initiator of an IKE exchange generates a four-byte Initiator SPI. The responder generates the four-byte Responder SPI. In the first IKE packet sent by the Initiator, the Responder SPI is 0x00000000. The SPI numbers uniquely identify an established IKE SA. Each endpoint selects the IKE decryption key for an encrypted IKE message based on the SPI numbers.

An IKE session consists of IKE packet *exchanges*. Each exchange consists of a single request packet and a single reply packet. If there is any packet loss, it is the initiator's responsibility to retransmit its request.<sup>15</sup> Each exchange packet has a message ID, which starts at zero and is incremented for each message exchange. The message ID allows detecting retransmitted packets and handling out-of-order IKE packets. There is a distinct message ID for messages started at each IKE peer.

The IKEv2 protocol uses two exchanges to establish an IKE SA and an associated IPsec SA. The IKE SA is then used to send and receive further configuration and management commands. The first exchange is called IKE\_SA\_INIT, and the second exchange is called IKE\_AUTH. Together these two exchanges are referred to as the *initial exchanges*. Once these two exchanges are completed, both the initiator and the responder have established the IKE SA and one IPsec SA. Once the IKE SA is established, other additional exchange types are used to establish additional IPsec SAs, rekey the existing IKE SA or IPsec SAs, make configuration changes, perform a liveness detection of peers, and terminate IKE or IPsec SAs.

The following sections describe the IKE exchanges in detail and explain how they work together to establish IPsec connections.

### 3.2 IKE Exchange Types

The exchange type for additional IPsec SA messages is called CREATE\_CHILD\_SA. Another common exchange type is the INFORMATIONAL exchange, which is used for notification messages such as IPsec SA deletions, rekeying, liveness (dead peer detection), and mobility updates. Each exchange can relay additional information about supported features or algorithms using Notify payloads.

<sup>15</sup> In IKEv1, either party could retransmit, which led to race conditions and amplification attacks.

### 1087 3.2.1 The IKE\_SA\_INIT Exchange

1088 The IKE\_SA\_INIT exchange sends the cryptographic IKE proposals for setting up the encrypted  
 1089 IKE SA. Each proposal consists of a list of components needed to establish an IKE SA. These  
 1090 components are called *transforms*. For IKEv2, four types of transforms are required: encryption  
 1091 (AEAD algorithms or encryption algorithms), integrity (none for AEAD<sup>16</sup>, or a MAC otherwise),  
 1092 (Elliptic Curve) Diffie-Hellman, and Pseudo Random Function (PRF). The IKE\_SA\_INIT  
 1093 exchange also includes data that will be used to generate a shared secret that is used to derive  
 1094 symmetric keys to protect later traffic between the two peers, such as the sender's (EC)DH  
 1095 public value (carried in the Key Exchange [KE] payload), a random nonce (in the nonce  
 1096 payload), and both IPsec SPIs (in the IKE Header). The initiator can propose multiple alternative  
 1097 transform combinations, and the responder picks out its preferred proposal with preferred  
 1098 transforms and returns a single proposal with those transforms and its own KE and nonce  
 1099 payloads and a responder SPI.

1100 The initiator needs to know or guess the cryptographic policy that is accepted by the responder.  
 1101 The initiator sends a list of transforms that represents its policy. For the initiator's most preferred  
 1102 (EC)DH Key Exchange algorithm, it will include the corresponding KE payload (e.g., a EC  
 1103 public key). If it turns out that the responder does not allow this (EC)DH algorithm, the  
 1104 responder will reply with an INVALID\_KEY notification that contains the responder's preferred  
 1105 value based on the list that the initiator sent. The initiator can use this to create a new  
 1106 IKE\_SA\_INIT packet with a proper KE payload that is acceptable to both initiator and responder  
 1107 policies.

1108 Since an (EC)DH computation is CPU intensive, a malicious entity could send many spoofed  
 1109 IKE\_SA\_INIT messages, causing the responder to perform multiple (EC)DH calculations,  
 1110 resulting in a denial of service attack. When a responder deems it is under attack, it may respond  
 1111 to an IKE\_SA\_INIT message with a special COOKIE payload, instead of the regular payloads.  
 1112 The initiator has generated this COOKIE value so it can determine that it has recently generated  
 1113 this COOKIE for a client that is still using the same IP address as when it was given this  
 1114 COOKIE payload. The initiator must resend its IKE\_SA\_INIT message and include the given  
 1115 COOKIE. This assures the responder that the initiator is a participant in the IKE exchange and  
 1116 not simply sending malicious packets using a forged (spoofed) IP address.

1117 The IKE\_SA\_INIT exchange is also used to detect the presence of network address translation  
 1118 (NAT) devices. If NAT is detected, the IKE negotiation will move to port 4500, and the IPsec  
 1119 connection will be configured to use UDP or TCP encapsulation to avoid problems with the  
 1120 NAT device rewriting the IP address of the IPsec packets. Often, NAT routers also drop all IP  
 1121 protocols except UDP and TCP, so by encapsulating the IPsec (ESP) packets into UDP or TCP,  
 1122 the packets will not be dropped by the NAT router. The endpoint behind the NAT device will  
 1123 also send one-byte KEEPALIVE packets, typically at 20 second intervals, to ensure that the  
 1124 NAT device will keep the port mapping open that is used by the endpoint behind NAT. This is

---

<sup>16</sup> AEAD algorithms combine encryption and integrity using a single private key. For the IKEv2 protocol, AEAD algorithms are listed as encryption algorithms. The (separate) integrity algorithm for AEAD is either not included or the special value for None is used.

1125 especially important with deployments of Carrier Grade NAT (CGN) that are typically deployed  
1126 on mobile data networks (LTE/5G). The KEEPALIVE packets serve no purpose beyond passing  
1127 the NAT device and are discarded by any endpoint IPsec stack that receives them.

1128 After the IKE\_SA\_INIT exchange has completed, both endpoints have performed the (EC)DH  
1129 key exchange and have generated the secret value called the SKEYSEED. All encryption and  
1130 authentication keys will be derived from this value using the negotiated PRF transform.<sup>17</sup> From  
1131 here on, all further packets are encrypted. However, both the initiator and the responder still need  
1132 to authenticate each other's identity.

### 1133 **3.2.2 The IKE\_AUTH Exchange**

1134 The peers still need to verify each other's identities and prove that the initial unencrypted IKE  
1135 SA messages were not modified in transit. The IKE\_AUTH exchange contains the payloads  
1136 needed for the receiver to authenticate the sender and its previous IKE\_SA\_INIT exchange. The  
1137 IKE\_AUTH exchange also contains payloads to negotiate the first IPsec SA, such as the  
1138 proposals and transforms to negotiate the cryptographic parameters, the source/destination  
1139 packet policies for the IPsec SA in the form of traffic selectors for the initiator (TSi) and  
1140 responder (TSr), and other options such as the mode of the IPsec SA and Configuration Payload  
1141 requests for obtaining an IP address and a DNS nameserver IP address.

1142 Since authentication can involve X.509 certificates and intermediary CA certificates, this packet  
1143 can end up being larger than the network MTU. To work around networks that do not handle IP  
1144 fragmentation properly, the IKE protocol itself supports fragmentation to prevent fragmentation  
1145 at the network layer. Typically, only the IKE\_AUTH packets trigger IKE fragmentation.

1146 Typical authentication methods are X.509 certificates, raw public keys (e.g., RSA or ECDSA),  
1147 or PSKs. IKE supports the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP). If EAP authentication is  
1148 required, more than one IKE\_AUTH exchange might be required to complete the authentication.  
1149 The authentication method can be different between the two endpoints, although they often use  
1150 the same method. One example of using different authentication methods by each party is a  
1151 remote access VPN where the server is authenticated using its X.509 certificate, but clients are  
1152 authenticated via EAP-TLS.<sup>18</sup>

1153 Once the IKE\_SA\_INIT and IKE\_AUTH exchanges have successfully completed, the two hosts  
1154 have set up an IKE SA and an IPsec SA. Any further communication will be sent using the  
1155 encrypted and authenticated IKE SA.

---

<sup>17</sup> Usually, the integrity algorithm and the PRF negotiated are the same algorithm. When using an AEAD cipher that does not require an integrity algorithm, the PRF negotiated is obviously a different algorithm—usually a hash function from the SHA-2 family.

<sup>18</sup> Since IPsec is usually a system service, using a certificate on the client would require administrative privileges on the client. If EAP credentials are used on the client instead, they could be stored in the non-administrative user's own profile.

### 1156 3.2.2.1 Traffic Selectors

1157 The IKE\_AUTH exchange negotiates the IPsec SA network parameters, such as source and  
 1158 destination IP address, address family, source and destination ports, and protocol, using traffic  
 1159 selectors. A traffic selector consists of:

- 1160 • The traffic selector type (e.g., IPv4 or IPv6 type)
- 1161 • The IP address range (start address and end address)
- 1162 • The IP protocol number (0 means all protocols)
- 1163 • The port range (start and end port, 0-65535 means all ports)<sup>19</sup>

1164 Additional traffic selector components are possible, too, such as Network Label or Security  
 1165 Context.

1166 Traffic selectors are negotiated in sets of two. A set of two traffic selectors denotes the policy for  
 1167 the source and destination traffic of one (inbound or outbound) IPsec SA. The IKE\_AUTH  
 1168 request contains at least the TS<sub>i</sub> and TS<sub>r</sub>. The TS<sub>i</sub> describes the sending and receiving address of  
 1169 the initiator, and the TS<sub>r</sub> describes the sending and receiving address of the responder.

1170 IKEv2 allows the concept of narrowing, where the responder picks a subset of the TS<sub>i</sub>/TS<sub>r</sub> that  
 1171 the initiator requested. This facilitates setting up a number of smaller-range IPsec SAs instead of  
 1172 one large network-to-network IPsec SA. This can enhance parallel processing. It is also used for  
 1173 the initiator obtaining an IP address from the responder where the initiator requests every address  
 1174 on the internet (by requesting 0.0.0.0/0) and is narrowed down by the responder to one IP  
 1175 address (for example, 192.0.2.1/32).

1176 An additional traffic selector pair can be included that contains the actual source, destination, and  
 1177 protocol values from the packet that triggered the IKE session at the initiator. This assists the  
 1178 responder in narrowing traffic selectors to a range that includes the traffic that the initiator wants  
 1179 to send to the responder.

### 1180 3.2.2.2 Configuration Payloads

1181 Optionally, during IKE\_AUTH, the hosts can also exchange Configuration Payloads (CPs). The  
 1182 initiator can request a number of configuration options, and the responder can respond with  
 1183 appropriate values. The main CPs are:

- 1184 • Internal IPv4 and IPv6 address and netmask
- 1185 • Internal IPv4 and IPv6 DNS server to use as generic DNS resolver
- 1186 • Internal IPv4 or IPv6 subnet
- 1187 • Internal IPv4 or IPv6 Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) relay address
- 1188 • Internal DNS domains for domains that must be resolved via the VPN
- 1189 • Internal DNSSEC trust anchors to use for internal DNSSEC-signed domains

---

<sup>19</sup> For protocols without ports, 0 is used. For protocols with no ports but types, such as ICMP, the value is used to denote type ranges.



- Application version

All these CPs enable the remote access VPN client to find and use resources on the remote network. And by obtaining an IP address on that remote network, other hosts on that network can potentially reach the remote VPN clients as if they were present locally. CPs are not used and are ignored on gateway-to-gateway and host-to-host IPsec deployments.

CPs are the successor to the IKEv1 non-standard XAUTH and ModeCFG payloads.

### 3.2.3 The CREATE\_CHILD\_SA Exchange

The CREATE\_CHILD\_SA exchange is used for three separate tasks:

- Create an additional IPsec SA
- Rekey an IPsec SA
- Rekey the IKE SA

Creating an additional IPsec SA uses similar IPsec payloads as those used to create the initial IPsec SA in the IKE\_AUTH exchange. Either endpoint can initiate a CREATE\_CHILD\_SA exchange. Lifetimes for IKE and IPsec SAs are not negotiated. Each peer is responsible for rekeying the relevant SAs before the lifetime of their local policy is exceeded.

*Rekeying* is the process of creating fresh cryptographic keys for an IKE SA or IPsec SA. IKE and IPsec keys are ephemeral and only stored in volatile memory for the duration of the session. Once an SA is rekeyed, the old cryptographic keys are wiped from memory. In the event of a compromise of one of the IPsec hosts, only the current session keys are still in memory and previously recorded sessions cannot be decrypted. IKE SA and IPsec SA session keys typically have a lifetime of one to eight hours. A rekey request can be for one of the IPsec SAs or for the IKE SA. A new IPsec SA is negotiated and installed. The outbound IPsec SA is used immediately. Once traffic is received on the new inbound IPsec SA, the old IPsec SAs are deleted. This ensures that rekeying does not lead to any traffic flow interruptions or leaking of unencrypted packets. Once an IKE rekey is complete, the associated IPsec SAs of the old IKE SA are transferred to the new IKE SA. The old IKE SA is then deleted.

### 3.2.4 The INFORMATIONAL Exchange

The purpose of the IKE INFORMATIONAL exchange is to provide the endpoints with a way to send each other status and error messages. Some commonly used informational messages are:

- Delete one or more IPsec SAs
- Delete this IKE SA
- Liveness probe (aka Dead Peer Detection (DPD))
- Mobility IP address updates for Mobile IKE (MOBIKE)

Either endpoint can initiate an informational exchange. The other endpoint is obliged to return an answer to prevent the initiator (of the informational exchange) from retransmitting. A delete

1225 message denotes the SPI of the IPsec SAs or IKE SA to be deleted. Deleting the IKE SA will  
1226 also cause all of its IPsec SAs to be deleted.

1227 An endpoint that has not received any IPsec traffic in a while might want to verify if the remote  
1228 endpoint is still alive. To do so, it can send an informational exchange message (i.e., a probe  
1229 message) containing zero payloads.<sup>20</sup> An endpoint receiving such an informational message must  
1230 respond with an empty informational message. If these probes are not answered for a configured  
1231 time period, the IKE SA and IPsec SA are terminated.

1232 A mobile device that is switching its connection (e.g., from LTE/5G to WiFi) needs to send an  
1233 informational message with a notification to its remote endpoint. The remote endpoint uses both  
1234 the content of the informational message, as well as the IP addresses observed from the IKE  
1235 packet itself, as an indication for which IP address to use as the updated IP address for the  
1236 mobile endpoint. Successful decryption of the packet (with properly incremented Message ID to  
1237 prevent replays) verifies the new IP address to use. This process is called Mobile IKE  
1238 (MOBIKE) and is specified in [32].

### 1239 3.3 IKE Authentication Models

1240 Different deployments require different authentication methods. Usually, hosts authenticate each  
1241 other using the same authentication method. But sometimes a client host authenticates a server  
1242 host differently from the method used by the server to authenticate the client.

#### 1243 3.3.1 Certificate-Based Authentication

1244 This method, also called *machine certificate authentication*, is most often used for deploying  
1245 IPsec within an organization when it involves a large number of devices. The organization can  
1246 set up a new internal X.509 certificate deployment or reuse an existing X.509 certificate-based  
1247 solution. Setting up a new host does not require any changes to the already deployed hosts.  
1248 Certificate Revocation Lists (CRLs) and the Online Certificate Store Protocol (OCSP) can be  
1249 used to revoke a particular certificate. Remote access VPN clients are often authenticated using  
1250 X.509 certificates. Cloud (mesh) encryption also often uses certificate-based authentication.

1251 A host that requires the other end to authenticate itself using certificates can send a CERTREQ  
1252 payload (during IKE\_SA\_INIT or IKE\_AUTH). Both parties then exchange their certificates in  
1253 CERT payloads during the IKE\_AUTH exchange. Intermediate CAs can also be sent as part of  
1254 the CERT payload.<sup>21</sup>

1255 Since certificate-based authentication requires certificates generated by CAs that may not be  
1256 trusted by the organizations verifying the certificates, this method is not always a usable solution  
1257 to connect two different organizations, as one (or both) of the organizations would need to trust

---

<sup>20</sup> There will be one encrypted payload containing zero payloads. These probes are sometimes combined with other features, in which case other payloads may be present within the encrypted payload.

<sup>21</sup> Some implementations have (wrongly) implemented sending multiple intermediate CA chains using PKCS#7. This has caused some interoperability issues. It is best to avoid intermediate CAs when possible.

1258 an external CA party not under their own control. For US government organizations, the Federal  
1259 Bridge CA can be used as a mutually trusted CA.

### 1260 **3.3.2 Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP)**

1261 EAP is a framework for adding arbitrary authentication methods in a standardized way to any  
1262 protocol. It uses a model of a client, a server, and a backend authentication, authorization, and  
1263 accounting (AAA) server. The client initiates an EAP authentication to the server. The server  
1264 forwards these messages to and from the AAA server. The AAA server will let the server and  
1265 client know that the client and server have successfully authenticated each other. AAA protocols  
1266 with EAP support include RADIUS [33] and Diameter [34].

1267 The most common EAP method used with IKEv2 is EAP-Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS),  
1268 although EAP-Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol version 2 (EAP-  
1269 MSCHAPv2) is used as well. EAP-TLS uses certificates issued to users, instead of certificates  
1270 issued to hosts. Some devices, such as mobile phones, often do not make such a distinction.  
1271 However, laptops generally have non-privileged users that cannot modify the operating system's  
1272 machine certificate store. These users cannot install a machine certificate but can install a  
1273 certificate for themselves for use with EAP-TLS.

1274 Usually, Clients use EAP to authenticate themselves to the server, but the server is authenticated  
1275 by the clients using regular certificate-based authentication.

### 1276 **3.3.3 Raw Public Key Authentication**

1277 Authentication using the raw public key of the other entity in a communication (there are no  
1278 certificates which bind the public key with the other entity's identity) is mostly used for Internet  
1279 of Things (IoT) devices or when authentication of the public keys is done via publication in  
1280 DNSSEC.<sup>22</sup> IoT devices often do not have the memory, storage, or CPU capacity to perform  
1281 X.509 certificate validation. These devices often have a hard-coded public key of the other end  
1282 in firmware for authenticating its signatures.

1283 When public keys are stored in DNS, and the DNS is secured against tampering or spoofing  
1284 using DNSSEC, there is no more need to use X.509 certificates. Certificates provide trust via the  
1285 entity that signs the certificate, but in this case the DNS itself containing the public key is already  
1286 signed. The trust anchor is not a CA, but a DNSSEC trust key responsible for that part of the  
1287 DNS hierarchy. And instead of certificates stating the validity period of the public key, raw  
1288 public keys in DNS are valid as long as these are still published in the DNS. DNSSEC prevents  
1289 replaying of old DNS data by adding signature lifetimes to DNS records. This type of  
1290 deployment is most commonly used within a single administrative network, similar to machine-  
1291 based certificate authentication.

---

<sup>22</sup> DNSSEC is a system of digital signatures to authenticate DNS content. The DNSSEC core specifications are defined in IETF RFCs 4033, 4034, and 4035.

### 3.3.4 Pre-shared Secret Key (PSK) Authentication

PSK-based authentication is often deployed because it is the easiest to configure. Each end of the communication has the identity of the other end and their pre-shared key. It does not require generating public keys or certificates or running an EAP infrastructure. It is most commonly used for gateway-to-gateway deployments, as it does not involve adding a third-party trust anchor to the VPN gateway device.

Some deployments use a PSK shared with all remote access VPN clients. Once the PSK has been obtained by an attacker, it can be used to impersonate the remote access VPN server. Even if the clients are using one-time passwords (OTPs), a man-in-the-middle attacker can obtain an OTP and log in as the remote user to the real remote access VPN. Therefore, group PSKs are strongly discouraged.

PSKs are often derived from dictionary words and are less than 32 characters long. Such insecure deployments are vulnerable to offline dictionary attacks.<sup>23</sup> PSKs must have a high entropy value. A good PSK is pseudo-randomly created and has at least 128 bits of entropy.

### 3.3.5 NULL Authentication

NULL authentication is a special kind of authentication. It really means that no authentication is required. There are two common use cases for this.

The first use case is to deploy IPsec to a large number of nodes where the goal is to only protect against passive attacks. It does not protect against attackers that can perform a man-in-the-middle attack. An advantage is that no authentication system, such as certificates, EAP, or DNSSEC needs to be deployed. For small-scale deployments this method should never be used, and strong PSKs should be used instead. Sometimes a NULL authentication deployment is gradually upgraded to an authenticated deployment.

The second use case only uses NULL authentication for the initiator. The responder still authenticates itself to the client using another authentication method, such as by a machine certificate. This creates a situation that is similar to HTTPS-based web sites: the client remains anonymous, but the server is authenticated. This is the method used for internet-based opportunistic IPsec, where two IPsec hosts attempt to establish an IPsec connection without a pre-existing configuration or knowledge of each other. This usually involves authentication based on DNSSEC or a widely acknowledged CA such as Let's Encrypt.<sup>24</sup> The advantage of this type of deployment is that only the servers need to have an identity for authentication. The clients (usually laptops and phones) do not need to have any kind of identity and can remain anonymous, at least at the network layer. Similar to HTTPS, the application layer might require the client to authenticate before it is allowed to access a particular resource.

<sup>23</sup> Technically, the attacker needs to man-in-the-middle the VPN client for one IKE\_INIT and IKE\_AUTH exchange; then the attacker can go offline for the dictionary attack,

<sup>24</sup> Let's Encrypt is a non-profit CA that has automated the deployment of free SSL/TLS certificates used to secure website communication, but their certificates can be used for IKE/IPsec as well. <https://www.letsencrypt.org>

1326 NIST does not recommend the use of NULL authenticated-based IPsec. Any deployment of  
1327 NULL authenticated IPsec must be categorized as being identical to plaintext unprotected  
1328 network traffic.

### 1329 **3.4 Network Address Translation (NAT)**

1330 During the IKE\_SA\_INIT exchange, both endpoints exchange information about what they  
1331 believe their IP address is.<sup>25</sup> The other end will confirm if that matches the source address of the  
1332 packet they received. If the endpoints detect that a NAT is present, they will move further IKE  
1333 communication from port 500 to port 4500. The change of UDP port was originally done to  
1334 prevent bad interaction with NAT devices that tried to support “IPsec passthrough”. This feature  
1335 caused more harm than good, and by moving to a new port, the IPsec passthrough modifications  
1336 performed by NAT devices were avoided.

1337 These days, no NAT devices perform IPsec passthrough. Once an IPsec SA has been negotiated,  
1338 the hosts will also enable UDP or TCP encapsulation of ESP packets to facilitate traversing the  
1339 NAT over a single port. This avoids two problems. The first problem is that NAT devices  
1340 commonly only support UDP and TCP, meaning that IPsec (ESP) packets would not be dropped  
1341 by some NAT devices. The second problem is that the NAT device needs to keep a port mapping  
1342 between the internal device’s ports used and how these ports are mapped onto the NAT device’s  
1343 public facing ports. It is easiest if one device behind the NAT device only needs one port  
1344 mapping for IKE and IPsec (ESP) traffic. The host behind NAT will also send one-byte  
1345 keepalive packets to ensure that the NAT device does not expire its NAT port mapping if the  
1346 VPN does not produce any traffic for some time. Otherwise, if the remote IPsec host starts  
1347 sending traffic towards the NAT device, the NAT device would no longer remember which  
1348 internal device to forward that traffic to, and the IPsec connection would no longer function.

1349 Some cloud providers issue an ephemeral or semi-static public IP address to some virtual  
1350 machines inside their cloud. The virtual machines are deployed with only an internal [35] IP  
1351 address. The cloud infrastructure uses NAT to translate the public IP address to the virtual  
1352 machine’s private IP address. This NAT will also trigger the NAT traversal mechanism of IKE.  
1353 This poses another problem. If the IPsec tunnel is configured with the public IP address as the  
1354 tunnel endpoint, the virtual machine cannot create packets with its public IP address as the  
1355 source address, since this public IP address is not configured on the machine itself. Packets  
1356 received after decryption are dropped because the operating system is not looking for packets  
1357 with the public IP address. A common workaround is for such virtual machines to configure the  
1358 public IP address on one of their network interfaces.

### 1359 **3.5 IKE Fragmentation**

1360 IKE packets can be larger than the common ethernet MTU of 1500 bytes. If these packets are  
1361 sent over the network, they will most likely be fragmented. Too often, those fragments will be  
1362 dropped by a firewall and the host will fail to receive the fragments for reassembly. This problem

---

<sup>25</sup> Technically, they exchange SHA-1 hashes of their IP addresses so as to add some level of privacy regarding the pre-NAT IP addresses used.

1363 is avoided by using IKE fragmentation, which fragments the packets at the application layer  
1364 instead of the network layer.

1365 IKEv2 fragmentation is specified in RFC 7383 [36]. The main difference with the IKEv1  
1366 vendor-specific implementations is that IKEv2 fragments are encrypted. This makes it harder for  
1367 an attacker to interfere. Note that while the fragments are encrypted, the fragments are not (yet)  
1368 authenticated because the IKE exchange has not yet completed. Once all fragments have been  
1369 received, the original IKE packet can be reconstructed and processed as if it was received in one  
1370 packet.

1371 IKEv2 fragmentation is supported for every exchange type except IKE\_SA\_INIT. Typically,  
1372 only the IKE\_AUTH exchange requires fragmentation, since that exchange carries the big X.509  
1373 certificates.

### 1374 **3.6 Mobile IKE (MOBIKE)**

1375 It is common these days that devices, such as mobile phones and laptops, have multiple network  
1376 interfaces. This allows those devices to switch to cheaper and/or faster networks when available.  
1377 Phones may use the local WiFi network at the office or at home and mobile networks (5G/LTE)  
1378 at other locations. Switching also happens when an existing network connection suddenly  
1379 degrades. Switching networks changes the source IP address used by the device. VPN traffic is  
1380 still sent to the old, no longer used IP address until the device establishes a new IPsec  
1381 connection.

1382 MOBIKE [32] addresses this issue. It assumes that an internal IP address is assigned by the VPN  
1383 on the device using CPs. This internal IP address will remain with this device, regardless of the  
1384 outer IP address used by the device. Once a device switches between its network interfaces, it  
1385 will send an INFORMATIONAL exchange packet with an UPDATE\_SA\_ADDRESS  
1386 notification. This packet will be sent using the new IP address. The VPN server will be able to  
1387 recognize the IPsec SA based on the SPI numbers, despite the fact that it is suddenly coming  
1388 from a different IP address. Once decrypted and authenticated, the VPN server will notice the  
1389 UPDATE\_SA\_ADDRESS payload and change the endpoint IP address (and port if  
1390 encapsulation is used due to NAT). It will reply with a confirmation message. At this point, all  
1391 IPsec SA traffic is sent and received using the client's new IP address. Since the VPN client's  
1392 applications are only using the obtained VPN IP address for communication to the remote access  
1393 network, and this IP address does not change when the device itself changes its network interface  
1394 and outer IP address, all existing connections remain intact. The applications are not even aware  
1395 that the network interfaces have switched.

1396 A device that wakes up from battery saving mode will generally send a MOBIKE update  
1397 whether or not its IP address changed. This ensures any NAT state updates that have happened  
1398 since the device went to sleep are reported back to the VPN server. For example, the NAT device  
1399 might have terminated the unused NAT port mapping between the device and the VPN server.  
1400 The MOBIKE packet will create a new fresh NAT port mapping entry, and the VPN server will  
1401 immediately be able to update the client's IP address and port number and activate the updated  
1402 VPN connection.

MOBIKE allows for more complicated setups with multiple IP addresses. While MOBIKE can be used as a failover mechanism for the gateway-to-gateway architecture, care should be taken with such a deployment. If one of the endpoints is compromised, its state could be copied onto a machine on the other side of the world, and a MOBIKE update message could be sent to redirect all traffic to the rogue location. The most secure option is to disable MOBIKE unless the IPsec configuration is for a remote access VPN client.

### 3.7 Post-Quantum Preshared Keys (PPKs)

It is unclear when a quantum computer will become available. Sufficiently large quantum computers will be able to break the finite field (classic) DH and ECDH key exchanges within the timeframe in which it would be expected that IPsec traffic should remain confidential. That is, the key exchange could be broken in weeks or months, while the expectation of confidentiality would be in the timeframe of decades. Adversaries could store today's encrypted communications for later decryption using quantum computers. This problem is not unique to IKE. Other encryption protocols, such as TLS, suffer from the same problem. It is expected that in the near future, quantum-resistant algorithms will be standardized and deployed for IKE, TLS, and other protocols. Until then, some deployments of IKE and IPsec might use PPKs to strengthen the current algorithms against potential future attacks using quantum computers.

With the exception of IKEv1 using a very strong PSKs, all IKEv1 and IKEv2 configurations are vulnerable to quantum computers. IKEv2 supports Postquantum Preshared Keys (PPKs) [37] as a countermeasure. For the purpose of defending against quantum computers, the PPK works similarly to the PSK in IKEv1 in that the PPK is mixed into the key derivation process in addition to the DH values. The PPK must be a cryptographically strong random key and is exchanged out of band. PPKs are identified by a static or ephemeral PPK Identity. This can be used to protect the identity of the connecting clients and facilitates the use of OTPs as the source of the PPK.

IKEv2 allows the gradual migration of a network from not using PPK to using PPK. First, some hosts are configured with PPK, and when two hosts both support PPK and have each other's PPK ID for which they find a matching PPK, the hosts will use the PPK as an additional input to create the KEYMAT and SKEYSEED that are used as input to the PRFs that generate the keying material for the IKE and IPsec SAs. Once all hosts support PPK, their configurations can be updated to mandate PPK.

While this protects the IPsec SAs since their key material derivation depends on the PPK, the initial IKE SA DH process is not protected by the PPK and can still be broken by a quantum computer. This will lead to a loss of privacy of the IKE identities and other information exchanged during the initial IKE Exchange, such as the traffic selectors used for the first IPsec SA. This can be prevented if the IKE implementation allows setting up a childless IKE SA (without IPsec) and then immediately rekeying the IKE SA. This rekeyed IKE SA is protected by the PPK, and IPsec SAs can then be set up using this new IKE SA without exposing any information to adversaries with quantum computers.

PPKs shall have at least of 128 bits of entropy.

### 1443 3.8 IKE Redirect

1444 The IKE Redirect [38] notify payload allows an IPsec server to send a redirection request to  
 1445 connecting or connected VPN clients. This can be used to reduce the load of overloaded IPsec  
 1446 servers or to take a server out of use (for instance, to update its operating system). Clients being  
 1447 redirected MUST use the same credentials they were originally using before being redirected. A  
 1448 redirection message includes an IP address or DNS name of the forwarding VPN that the VPN  
 1449 client will need to initiate a connection with .

1450 Redirected messages sent in IKE\_AUTH are only processed after both ends have authenticated  
 1451 each other. This allows a server to only send specific clients to another server, for instance all  
 1452 clients of a certain customer in a multi-tenant deployment or some individual power users  
 1453 generating a lot of traffic. But it still requires that the (overloaded) server performs full IKE  
 1454 exchanges to all connecting clients, only to redirect them to different server hosts.

1455 Redirected messages sent in IKE\_SA\_INIT are not authenticated. Clients that accept such  
 1456 redirected messages should take necessary precautions to prevent denial of service attacks. The  
 1457 advantage for the host performing the redirection is that it can redirect clients without performing  
 1458 a full IKE exchange.<sup>26</sup> The disadvantage is that redirections in IKE\_SA\_INIT cannot select the  
 1459 specific clients for redirection by their IDs, since the client ID has not yet been transmitted to the  
 1460 server.

1461 Redirected messages can be used to provide a redundant set of servers for the gateway-to-  
 1462 gateway deployment. A failing server can redirect clients to the other (backup) server. In such an  
 1463 architecture, it is recommended that redirect messages be limited for each endpoint based on  
 1464 preconfigured IP addresses.

### 1465 3.9 Differences Between IKEv2 and the Obsolete IKEv1

1466 The IKEv2 protocol builds on the lessons learned with IKEv1. IKEv2 is simpler, faster, and  
 1467 more secure. IKEv2 has some important new features over IKEv1, such as mobility support  
 1468 (MOBIKE), support for newer cryptographic algorithms, anti-distributed denial of service  
 1469 (DDoS) support, and server redirection support. It is recommended that existing IKEv1  
 1470 installations be upgraded to IKEv2.

1471 For those familiar with IKEv1, the main differences between IKEv1 and IKEv2 are:

- 1472 • IKEv1 was designed to be a far more general-purpose key exchange protocol, but many
- 1473 extraneous features ended up not being used at all. IKEv2 no longer has these features.
- 1474 • Some IKEv1 protocol extensions are now part of the IKEv2 core specification, such as
- 1475 IKE fragmentation<sup>27</sup>, NAT Traversal, and Liveness Detection—formerly called Dead
- 1476 Peer Detection (DPD). This means that these features are always available in IKEv2.

---

<sup>26</sup> Most importantly, it can skip the DH calculation, which is the most expensive operation of an IKE exchange.

<sup>27</sup> Technically, IKE fragmentation is a separate RFC, but it is implemented by most vendors.



- IKEv1 has a large number of exchange types to choose from (Main Mode, Aggressive Mode, Revised Mode, etc.) With IKEv2, there is no choice of exchange methods, so this no longer needs to be explicitly configured.
- The IKEv2 exchange has anti-DDoS protection using cookies.
- When an IKEv1 endpoint uses the wrong PSK to encrypt a message, the other endpoint is unable to decrypt the encrypted message. For the endpoint receiving this erroneous message, it has no way to distinguish this error from other problems such as packet corruption.
- In IKEv1, both endpoints are responsible for retransmissions, leading to conflicting retransmits and denial of service vectors. In IKEv2, only the exchange initiator is responsible for retransmission.
- In IKEv1, the IKE SA can expire while the IPsec SA is still active. This could lead to strange scenarios with DPD. In IKEv2, every IPsec SA has an IKE SA. If the IKE SA expires, all IPsec SAs are torn down as well. This guarantees that every IPsec SA has a functional control channel, which was not the case with IKEv1.
- In IKEv1, rekeying always requires a reauthentication of the two end points. Some proprietary extensions allow rekeying without reauthentication. Reauthentication is not always desirable, especially with the use of OTPs or hardware tokens requiring the use of a PIN or fingerprint for activation by the user (such as a VPN client), as it would require human interaction to keep the IPsec connection alive. In IKEv2, rekeying and reauthentication are separate processes with their own lifetimes.
- In IKEv1, transport mode and compression are negotiated, and a mismatched configuration would lead to a fatal IKE error. In IKEv2, the initiator can request these, but if the responder does not confirm those requests, the IPsec SA is established in tunnel mode (or without compression).
- In IKEv1, the IKE SA and IPsec SA can use different DH groups during key establishment (i.e., the DH group used to establish the IKE SA can be different than the DH group used to establish the IPsec SA). This is possible because the IKE and IPsec parameters are negotiated in 2 different message exchanges, taking place at different times. In IKEv2, there is only one exchange of parameters, and the first IPsec SA is established using the IKE SA DH group. Subsequent IPsec SAs can perform an additional DH exchange, thus ensuring the property of PFS; that exchange can use a different group. However, when configuring multiple IPsec SAs, there is no guarantee which one will be brought up first, either through an operator or by on-demand tunnel establishments. Therefore, in IKEv2 the DH group selected should be the same for the IKE SA and the IPsec SAs.
- In IKEv1, ESP encapsulation can only happen in UDP. IKEv2 can also use TCP and TLS encapsulation on any port. The TCP/TLS encapsulation cannot be negotiated and must be configured manually or via configuration provisioning. TCP port 4500 is often the default used. This might require firewall-rule updates.
- When migrating from IKEv1 to IKEv2, an upgrade of the algorithms used is strongly recommended. 3DES, MD5, SHA-1 and DH Group 2 and 5 should not be used. Instead, AES-XCBC with HMAC-SHA-2 or AES-GCM with either DH group 14 or an ECDH group (19, 20, or 21) should be used.

- IKEv2 Traffic Selector negotiations allow narrowing. This helps with creating multiple parallel IPsec SAs per traffic flow, which generally improves performance as hardware (i.e., central processing units [CPUs] and network interface cards [NICs]) can then handle multiple parallel streams at once.
- In IKEv1 it is not always possible to detect different groups of clients early enough to select the right authentication mechanism or the right PSK. This complicates multi-tenant VPNs. In IKEv2, the initiator can optionally send the expected ID of the peer in the IDr payload. This allows the responder (i.e., the server) to always select the proper tenant group.
- IKEv1 with PSK has the side effect of offering quantum computing resistance. In IKEv2 this is no longer the case, but a separate RFC [37] specifies how to use PPKs to gain the same protection in IKEv2.

### 3.10 Manual Keying

While it is possible to hard-code the IPsec information using out-of-band communication—called *manual keying*—this MUST NOT be used. The IKE protocol handles a number of other security properties, none of which are enforced when using manual keying. Encryption keys would never be refreshed when a fixed key is manually input and used, so any compromise would allow an attacker to decrypt all previously monitored traffic under the fixed key. Some values, such as nonces, counters, and IVs, must never be used more than once, otherwise the encryption may become vulnerable (weaken).

The only time that manual keying might be acceptable is if another trusted entity, such as a Security Controller in the SDWAN paradigm, assumes these responsibilities. Another example is the 3GPP protocol, which negotiates the IPsec parameters between a cell tower and handset using a non-IKE protocol.

Administrators sometimes mistakenly believe that manual keying is easier to set up than automated keying via IKE. However, manual keying is much harder to set up than IKE.

Manual keying is typically only used for software testing and IPsec benchmark tests.

This recommendation discourages the use of manual keying.

### 3.11 IKE Summary

- IPsec uses IKE to create security associations, which are sets of values that define the security of IPsec-protected connections. The first IPsec SA is created in conjunction with the IKE SA during the initial exchanges.
- The IKE SA is used to securely communicate IPsec configuration, status, and management information, such as setting up additional IPsec SAs, rekey events, deletions, and other notifications.
- IKEv2 is faster, more versatile, and uses more modern cryptography compared to IKEv1. IKEv1 should not be used for new deployments, and existing deployments using IKEv1 should be converted to IKEv2 when possible.

## 4 The IPsec Protocols

IPsec is a collection of protocols that assist in protecting communications over networks.<sup>28</sup> This section focuses on the primary component of IPsec, the Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP), which protects the confidentiality and integrity of data packets. The section also briefly covers the other IPsec components, the IP Payload Compression Protocol (IPComp) and the Authentication Header (AH) protocol. All the parameters and cryptographic keys needed by the IPsec protocols are negotiated using the IKE protocol as described in Section 3.

### 4.1 Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)

ESP is the core IPsec security protocol. It has largely been unchanged since its second version, published in 1998. The current version (IPsec-v3) was specified in RFC 4303 in 2005 [19]. It contains only a few updates to the IPsec-v2 specification in RFC 2406 [39]. Since all the changes to ESP are either backwards compatible or are new features that would need to be negotiated via IKE before these are enabled for ESP, there are no compatibility issues between IPsec implementations receiving and sending ESP packets. Regardless, practically all current implementations support IPsec-v3. Features only available in IPsec-v3 are:

- Support for AEAD algorithms
- Extended Sequence Numbers (ESNs)
- Enhanced policy support (via Security Policy Database [SPD]/Security Association Database [SAD])
- Padding support
- Dummy packet support

The use of padding and the capability of sending dummy messages increase traffic flow confidentiality (TFC) by making it harder for an eavesdropper who cannot decrypt the packets to deduce anything from the encrypted packet sizes or timings.

ESP provides encryption and integrity protection. The outer header is not fully protected, allowing for routers that forward ESP packets to still modify certain flags, such as Quality of Service (QoS) and Time to Live (TTL) values.

ESP's encryption functionality can be disabled through the selection of the Null ESP encryption algorithm or the AES-GMAC AEAD algorithm. AES-GMAC is a variant of the AES-GCM algorithm that provides integrity protection without encryption. ESP can be used to provide either encryption and integrity protection; or only integrity protection. AH deployments should be migrated to these ESP algorithms. ESP supports AEAD and classic (non-AEAD) encryption with integrity methods.

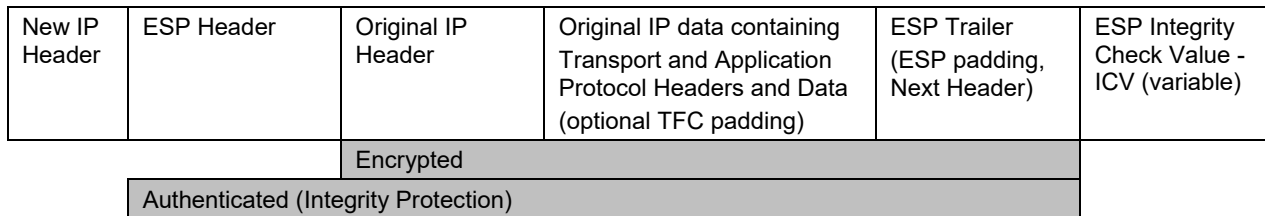
---

<sup>28</sup> RFC 4301 provides an overview of IPsec [40].

#### 4.1.1 Tunnel Mode and Transport Mode

ESP has two modes: transport and tunnel. In *tunnel mode*, (see Figure 7), a new packet is constructed that contains the (original) IP packet being sent through the tunnel by 1) placing an ESP header and trailer around the original IP header and its payload, 2) encrypting the original header, payload and ESP trailer, 3) computing an integrity check value (ICV) over the ESP header and the encrypted data, 4) placing the ICV at the end of the packet being constructed, and 5) adding a new IP header to the beginning of the packet. The ICV computation does not include the new IP header.

The new IP header lists the endpoints of the ESP tunnel (such as two IPsec gateways) as the source and destination of the packet, and contains as its payload the entire, now encrypted, original packet. Because of this, tunnel mode can be used with all VPN architectures described in Section 2.4. As shown in Figure 7, tunnel mode can encrypt and protect the integrity of both the data and the original IP header for each packet. Encrypting the original IP header and its payload protects their confidentiality; encrypting the original IP header conceals the nature of the communications, such as the actual source or destination of the packet, protocol, and ports used that would indicate which application is likely being used. The ICV is used to detect any changes to the data over which the ICV is computed.



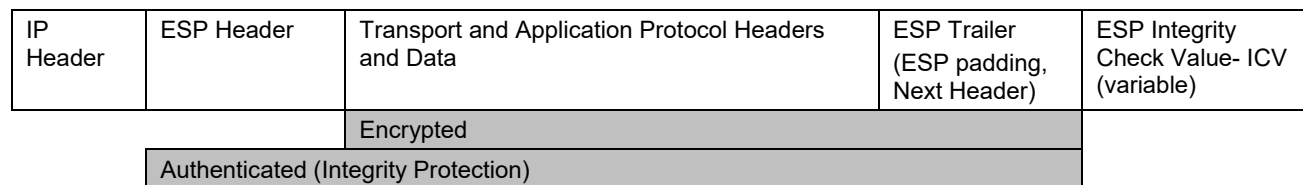
**Figure 7: ESP Tunnel Mode Packet**

ESP tunnel mode is used for gateway to gateway deployments, remote access VPNs, and various network virtualization deployments. It is also required when the IPsec connection needs to traverse a NAT, which rewrites the outer IP address.

For host-to-host deployments within data centers, local networks, and virtual machines where no NAT is deployed, ESP transport mode is often used. In *transport mode* (see Figure 8), ESP uses the original IP header instead of creating a new one. The ESP payload and trailer are encrypted, and an ICV is computed over the ESP header and the encrypted data. Integrity protection is not provided for the IP header. The overhead of the transport mode is less than for the tunnel mode because it does not have to create an entire new IP header.

Transport mode is incompatible with NAT. For example, in each TCP packet, the TCP checksum is calculated on both the TCP and IP fields, including the source and destination addresses in the IP header. If NAT is being used, one or both of the IP addresses are altered, so NAT needs to recalculate the TCP checksum. If ESP is encrypting packets, the TCP header is encrypted; NAT cannot recalculate the checksum, so NAT fails. This is not an issue in tunnel mode; because the entire TCP packet is hidden, NAT will not attempt to recalculate the TCP checksum of the inner encrypted packet, only of the outer IP address which is not part of the ESP encryption. However,

tunnel mode and NAT have other potential compatibility issues.<sup>29</sup> Section 7.2.1 provides guidance on overcoming NAT-related issues.



**Figure 8: ESP Transport Mode Packet**

#### 4.1.2 Encryption with Separate Integrity Protection

ESP uses symmetric cryptography to provide encryption for IPsec packets. Accordingly, both endpoints of an IPsec connection protected by ESP encryption must use the same key to encrypt and decrypt the packets. When an endpoint encrypts data, it divides the data into small blocks (for the AES algorithm, blocks of 128 bits each), and then performs multiple sets of cryptographic operations (known as rounds) using the data blocks and key. Encryption algorithms that work in this way are known as *block cipher algorithms*. When the other endpoint receives the encrypted data, it performs decryption using the same key and a similar process, but with the steps reversed and the cryptographic operations altered.

After encryption has been performed, the first step for providing integrity protection is to create a MAC on a message using a MAC algorithm and a secret key shared by the two endpoints. The MAC is added to the packet, and the packet is sent to the recipient. The recipient can then regenerate the MAC using the shared key and confirm that the two MACs match, thus determining whether the data has been modified. IPsec mostly uses a keyed-hash message authentication code (HMAC) algorithm [41] for integrity protection, which uses approved hash functions. Examples of HMAC are HMAC-SHA-256 and HMAC-SHA-1. Another common non-HMAC integrity algorithm is AES Cipher Block Chaining MAC (AES-XCBC-MAC-96) [42].<sup>30</sup>

#### 4.1.3 AEAD Encryption with Built-In Integrity

Encryption with separate integrity protection (as described in Section 4.1.2) requires two separate cryptographic processes over the data using two different secret keys. AEAD combines these two processes. This significantly increases performance. It also provides more constant-time processing when errors occur, resulting in a more robust error handling process that is less susceptible to timing attacks. The reverse process produces either the plaintext data or an error indication. For IKEv2 and ESP, AES-GCM is specified in [43] as an AEAD algorithm. Due to

<sup>29</sup> One possible issue is the inability to perform incoming source address validation to confirm that the source address is the same as that under which the IKE SA was negotiated. Other possible issues include packet fragmentation, NAT mapping timeouts, and multiple clients behind the same NAT device.

<sup>30</sup> Federal agencies are required to use NIST-approved algorithms and FIPS-validated cryptographic modules. HMAC with a hash function from the SHA-2 family is NIST-approved, but AES-XCBC-MAC-96 is not.

the way that IKEv1 handles the separation of encryption from data integrity protection in IKE packets, AEAD algorithms cannot be used in IKEv1. IKEv1 can, however, still negotiate AEAD algorithms for ESP.

The nonce used by an AEAD algorithm must be unique for every encryption operation with the same secret key but does not need to be unpredictable.<sup>31</sup> The nonce in IKE is built using an implicit part (the salt) and an explicit part (the initialization vector, or IV). The implicit part is based on the keying material calculated from the DH key exchange and negotiated PRF, similarly to how secret encryption keys are generated. This value is never transmitted and binds the encryption to the DH channel. The explicit part is transmitted and usually based on an increasing, and thus unique, counter. Reuse of the IV with the same secret key compromises the security of the data. Thus, these algorithms must be used in conjunction with IKE, and cannot be used with static or manual keys. An SA must be terminated before the counter reaches its maximum possible value.

#### 4.1.4 Common ESP Algorithms

Examples of common algorithms used by ESP are AES-GCM [44] and AES-Cipher Block Chaining (AES-CBC) [45] with a SHA-2-HMAC. Most algorithms have limitations on the amount of data that can be safely encrypted with a single key, and requirements for auxiliary parameters.

The Triple DES (3DES) encryption algorithm is no longer recommended. It is much slower than AES-GCM and AES-CBC, and it requires more frequent rekeying to avoid birthday attacks due to its smaller block size of 64 bits. The HMAC-MD5 and HMAC-SHA-1 integrity algorithms are also no longer NIST-approved.

For the latest cryptographic recommendations, see NIST SP 800-131A [47] and FIPS 140 [13].

#### 4.1.5 ESP Packet Fields

ESP adds a header and a trailer around each packet's payload. As shown in Figure 9, each ESP header is composed of two fields:

- **SPI.** Each IPsec SA (inbound and outbound) contains an SPI value, which acts as a unique identifier for the IPsec SA. The endpoints use these SPI values, along with the destination IP address and (optionally) the IPsec protocol type (in this case, ESP) to determine which SA is being used, and which decryption key should be used.
- **(Extended) Sequence Number.** Each packet is assigned a sequential sequence number, and only packets within a sliding window of sequence numbers are accepted. This provides protection against replay attacks because duplicate packets will use the same

---

<sup>31</sup> The terms nonce and IV have not seen consistently use between NIST and IETF publications. In general, what is required is the use of a guaranteed unique non-secret value. Note that the IV needed for the AEAD algorithm is separate from the integrity check value (ICV) used in each packet to ensure that two identical plaintext payloads encrypt to different encrypted payloads (and thus cannot be detected as identical).

sequence number. This also helps to thwart denial of service attacks because old packets that are replayed will have sequence numbers outside the window and will be dropped immediately without performing any more processing. Originally (in IPsec-v2) the sequence numbers for IPsec packets were defined as a 32-bit number. Current hardware can transmit 100 gigabits per second (Gbps), or about 150 million packets per second, meaning that the 32-bit sequence number space would be exhausted in 30 seconds. It would be impractical to rekey an IPsec SA every 30 seconds, so IPsec-v3 [19] introduced Extended Sequence Numbers (ESNs). If negotiated with IKE, the IPsec SA is installed with 64-bit sequence numbers. The ESP wire format is unchanged, however, and only the lower 32 bits of the Sequence Number are transmitted in the ESP packet. Each endpoint keeps track of the higher 32-bit value and performs all integrity calculations based on the entire 64-bit sequence number.<sup>32</sup>

The next part of the packet is the payload. It is composed of the encrypted payload data and the IV, which is not encrypted. This is helpful in deterring traffic analysis. The IV is used during encryption. Its value is different in every packet, so if two packets have the same content, the inclusion of the IV will cause the encryption of the two packets to have different results. This makes ESP less susceptible to cryptanalysis.

To obfuscate the length and frequency of information sent over IPsec, the protocol allows for sending dummy data called *traffic flow confidentiality (TFC) padding*. TFC padding can be added to the unencrypted data before encryption, or it can be injected as a whole new packet with only padding being encrypted to a certain size between real encrypted data transmissions. An observer cannot tell if TFC is enabled, and more importantly, can no longer make any reasonable assumptions based on packet size or frequency. One common deployment of TFC is to pad all packets to the maximum MTU value, resulting in all ESP packets sent being the exact same length. This would increase the amount of encrypted data sent, so on links where transmission costs depend on the amount of data sent (e.g., LTE/5G), there is a cost associated with using TFC.

The third part of the packet is the ESP trailer, which contains at least two fields and may optionally include one more:

- **ESP Padding.** An ESP packet may optionally contain padding, which is additional bytes of data that make the packet larger and are discarded by the packet's recipient. Because ESP uses block ciphers for encryption, padding may be needed so that the encrypted data is an integral multiple of the block size. Padding may also be needed to ensure that the ESP trailer ends on a multiple of four bytes.
- **ESP Padding Length.** This number indicates the length of the padding in bytes. The Padding Length field is mandatory.

---

<sup>32</sup> It is assumed that an application would notice a packet loss of 2<sup>32</sup> packets, which would lead the hosts to use a different high-order 32-bit value and fail the integrity check of the packet. [48] does specify a method of coping with such an unusual situation.

- **Next Header.** In tunnel mode, the outer (original) IP header is followed by an inner (new) IP header; thus, the next payload is an IP packet, so the Next Header value is set to four, indicating IP-in-IP (one IP packet tunneled in another IP packet). In transport mode, the payload is usually a transport layer protocol, often TCP (protocol number 6) or UDP (protocol number 17). Every ESP trailer contains a Next Header value.
- **Integrity Check Value (ICV).** This is used to verify the integrity of the encrypted data. For AES-GCM and AES-Counter with CBC-MAC (AES-CCM), it consists of an 8, 12, or 16-byte Authentication Tag. The 16-byte ICV value is recommended by NIST and by RFC 8247 [20]. The recipient of the packet can recalculate the ICV value to confirm that the portions of the packet other than the outermost IP header have not been altered in transit.

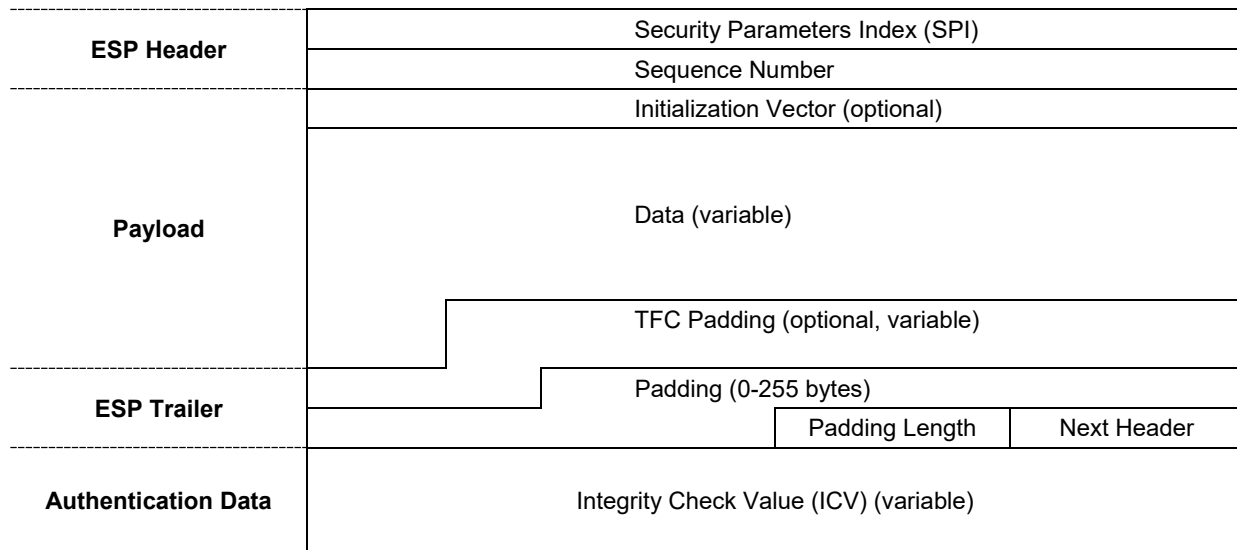
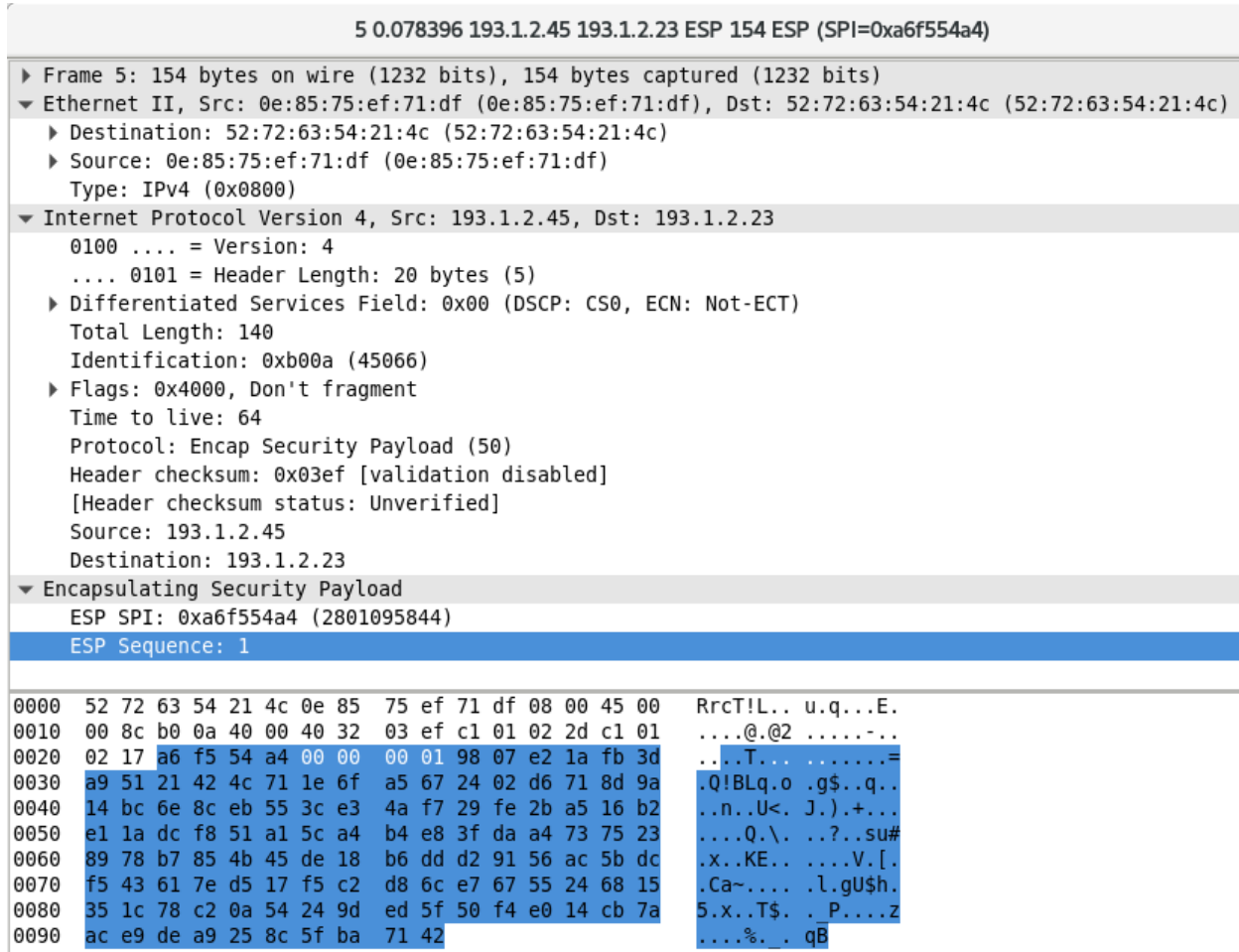


Figure 9: ESP Packet Fields

#### 4.1.6 How ESP Works

Reviewing and analyzing actual ESP packets can provide a better understanding of how ESP works. Figure 10 shows the bytes that compose an actual ESP packet and their ASCII representations. The ESP packet only contains four sections (ignoring the link layer): IP header, ESP header, encrypted data (payload and ESP trailer), and (optionally) authentication information. By examining the encrypted data, it is not possible to determine if this packet was generated in transport mode or tunnel mode. However, because the IP header is unencrypted, the IP protocol field in the header does reveal which IPsec protocol the payload uses (in this case, ESP). As shown in Figure 7 and Figure 8, the unencrypted fields in both modes (tunnel and transport) are the same.





**Figure 10: ESP Packet Capture Using Wireshark, Showing Sequence Number 1**

Although it is difficult to tell from Figure 10, the ESP header fields are not encrypted. Figure 11 shows a network traffic capture, made with the tcpdump tool, of encrypted traffic generated by the ping command, followed by an IKE session, followed by another ping that is now protected by ESP. Each direction uses its own negotiated SPI value for its packets, which corresponds to an ESP connection being composed of two one-way connections, each with its own SPI. Both hosts initially set the sequence number to 1, and both incremented the number to 2 for their second packets. The tcpdump tool labels IKE packets as “isakmp”, a legacy name from the IKEv1 protocol.

```

1755 13:45:34.118804 IP 203.0.113.1 > 198.51.100.1: ICMP echo request, id 27083, seq 2, length
1756 64
1757 13:45:34.118850 IP 198.51.100.1 > 203.0.113.1: ICMP echo reply, id 27083, seq 2, length 64
1758 13:45:39.469941 IP 203.0.113.1.isakmp > 198.51.100.1.isakmp: isakmp: parent_sa
1759 ikev2_init[I]
1760 13:45:39.472043 IP 198.51.100.1.isakmp > 203.0.113.1.isakmp: isakmp: parent_sa
1761 ikev2_init[R]
1762 13:45:39.481690 IP 203.0.113.1.isakmp > 198.51.100.1.isakmp: isakmp: child_sa
1763 ikev2_auth[I]
1764 13:45:39.525826 IP 198.51.100.1.isakmp > 203.0.113.1.isakmp: isakmp: child_sa
1765 ikev2_auth[R]
1766 13:45:39.587728 IP 203.0.113.1 > 198.51.100.1: ESP(spi=0xc55ed62b,seq=0x1), length 120
1767 13:45:39.587773 IP 198.51.100.1 > 203.0.113.1: ESP(spi=0xf6fc7c09,seq=0x1), length 120
1768 13:45:40.646761 IP 203.0.113.1 > 198.51.100.1: ESP(spi=0xc55ed62b,seq=0x2), length 120
1769 13:45:40.646800 IP 198.51.100.1 > 203.0.113.1: ESP(spi=0xf6fc7c09,seq=0x2), length 120

```

Figure 11: tcpdump Capture of ping, IKE, and ESP Packets

## 4.2 ESP Encapsulation

ESP packets cannot traverse a NAT device in all circumstances. If an IPsec connection uses transport mode, changing the IP address on the packets will invalidate the integrity checks imposed by IPsec. The NAT device cannot rewrite the ICV because it does not have access to the keying material needed to do so. For all intents and purposes, the NAT device is a malicious actor that IPsec protects against.

The ESP protocol has no ports. If multiple clients send ESP from behind the same NAT router, it would be difficult to track the ESP packets to the respective clients, as they would all have the same destination IP—that of the NAT device. And while SPI numbers are uniquely generated for each IPsec host, there is no guarantee that two hosts behind the same NAT will not end up picking the same SPI number for an IPsec SA. Furthermore, often NAT routers do not understand or translate anything other than the UDP and TCP protocols, causing ESP packets to be dropped by the NAT device.

### 4.2.1 UDP Encapsulation of ESP

To overcome these issues, ESP can be encapsulated in UDP (ESP in UDP). The NAT device can rewrite the IP address of the outer UDP packet and track multiple clients by the UDP port number. For historical reasons,<sup>33</sup> when IKE detects a NAT during the negotiation, it switches the IKE negotiation from UDP port 500 to UDP port 4500. It uses a regular UDP packet header, followed by a four-byte header with all zeroes (Non-ESP Marker) following the UDP header. Then the IKE header follows.

ESP in UDP also uses port 4500 to ensure that the NAT device only has one NAT mapping for all traffic (ESP and IKE). Following the regular UDP packet header, the ESP header follows. The first four bytes of the ESP header is the SPI number, which cannot be 0. Thus, an implementation receiving a packet on port 4500 can determine whether the packet is an ESP in UDP packet or an

<sup>33</sup> Some NAT devices tried to be helpful by looking at the SPI and rewriting or multiplexing these. It just made things break more. The solution was to avoid UDP port 500 completely to avoid any NAT “helper” algorithms. IKEv2 even allows skipping UDP port 500 altogether and using UDP port 4500 for all IKE messages.

1796 IKE packet, depending on whether or not it sees the SPI number of the non-ESP marker.  
1797 Usually, the kernel receiving an ESPinUDP packet will just strip the UDP header away without  
1798 bothering with the UDP checksum (which not all NAT routers properly recalculate) and process  
1799 the remaining ESP data as if it was received as an ESP packet without encapsulation. If the  
1800 kernel detects an IKE packet, it will send this packet to the IKE process for processing by the  
1801 IKE daemon.

1802 Starting with IKEv2, even if no NAT was detected, endpoints need to support receiving ESP and  
1803 ESPinUDP packets on all their IPsec SAs. Each endpoint may decide when to use encapsulation  
1804 and when not to. IKEv2 also allows initiating a new IKE\_SA\_INIT on UDP port 4500,  
1805 bypassing UDP port 500 completely.

#### 1806 **4.2.2 TCP Encapsulation of ESP**

1807 Implementations supporting TCP encapsulation [49], where ESP packets are wrapped into a TCP  
1808 stream, can also choose to use TCP. This provides a much-needed method to prevent IPsec from  
1809 being easily filtered and blocked. Lacking TCP encapsulation was one of the reasons why SSL  
1810 VPNs came into existence, as these could not be easily blocked by blocking the IPsec protocols  
1811 (UDP port 500 and 4500 and protocol ESP). TCP encapsulation ports cannot be negotiated, as  
1812 this would require that the negotiations start on the well-known port susceptible to blocking.  
1813 Therefore, the TCP port has to be preconfigured manually or via the IPsec client provisioning  
1814 system.

1815 The ESP in TCP encapsulation uses an ASCII prefix tag of "IKETCP" so that an additional layer  
1816 can be used, such as TLS. In that case, encrypted packets are encapsulated using a TCP  
1817 connection that uses TLS. The packet processor can read the prefix and detect the start of an  
1818 IKE/ESP stream, in which case it can send this traffic to the proper handler. Since restrictive  
1819 networks often still (have to) allow access to HTTPS websites, using TLS on port 443 to protect  
1820 (or really, hide) the TCP stream containing the encapsulated ESP packets will yield the best  
1821 results. However, networks are often only misconfigured to drop all UDP traffic. Moving to ESP  
1822 encapsulation on TCP port 4500 without TLS framing will usually be enough to be able to  
1823 establish IPsec connections.

1824 Implementations are encouraged to regularly try to go back to UDP encapsulation. TCP  
1825 encapsulation means there are possibly two TCP layers involved in a packet: the TCP connection  
1826 being encrypted and the TCP connection carrying the ESP packet. These two TCP layers will  
1827 both independently determine retransmissions. Especially when there is packet loss, these two  
1828 TCP streams will badly interfere with each other.

#### 1829 **4.3 IP Payload Compression Protocol (IPComp)**

1830 ESP can be deployed with IPComp. Before a packet is encrypted, the packet will be considered  
1831 for compression. If the packet is very small already, such as an ICMP message, no compression  
1832 is done, and the packet is encrypted as is; otherwise, the packet is compressed. However, various  
1833 compression algorithms do not guarantee that an attempted compression does not end up being  
1834 larger than the original. If this turns out to be the case, the original packet is encrypted without

1835 compression. If the compressed result is smaller, the compressed packet is encrypted. On the  
 1836 receiving end the packet is decrypted, and if it was compressed, it will be decompressed.

1837 However, applications that send large amounts of data usually already compress their data. At  
 1838 that point, attempting to compress already compressed data will not yield smaller packets, and a  
 1839 host only ends up wasting CPU cycles at the IPsec layer attempting futile compression. As such,  
 1840 IPsec level compression has not seen widespread use. This might change in the near future with  
 1841 the emergence of IoT devices and other battery-powered devices that use mobile data (LTE/5G).  
 1842 These devices save battery power by transmitting fewer bytes, even if that reduction requires  
 1843 more CPU power for compression.

#### 1844 **4.4 Authentication Header (AH)**

1845 As with ESP, AH can be used in tunnel mode and transport mode. It only offers integrity  
 1846 algorithms and provides no confidentiality. The ESP protocol can use null encryption (ESP  
 1847 algorithm number 12) with an integrity algorithm such as HMAC-SHA-2<sup>34</sup> to accomplish the  
 1848 same as AH. Alternatively, ESP can use an AEAD algorithm such as AES-GMAC (ESP  
 1849 algorithm number 21) to offer integrity without confidentiality to replace AH.

1850 The use of AH is discouraged in this publication. The IETF has specified that AH is an optional  
 1851 IPsec protocol, which means it is not mandatory to implement and might not be available with all  
 1852 IPsec implementations. It is recommended that null encryption with the ESP protocol be used  
 1853 instead of the AH protocol when encryption is not desired.

1854 Some implementations support the legacy IPsec-v2 ESP without authentication in combination  
 1855 with AH. This is usually referred to as *AH+ESP*. This combined mode (ESP for encryption and  
 1856 AH for integrity) is no longer recommended [20], as it provides no advantage over regular ESP  
 1857 with authentication. Regular ESP with authentication also reduces the MTU compared to  
 1858 AH+ESP, due to the additional overhead of an AH header plus an ESP header versus just an ESP  
 1859 header with authentication.

1860 NIST discourages the use of AH.

#### 1861 **4.5 Summary**

1862 This section has described the IPsec protocols ESP, IPComp, and AH. The following  
 1863 summarizes the key points from the section:

- 1864 • The IKE protocol is used to manage IPsec security associations.
- 1865 • ESP is the main IPsec protocol and provides integrity protection for all packet headers  
 1866 and data, with the exception of a few IP header fields that routinely change unpredictably  
 1867 in transit. Since those header fields can change as the packet travels from sender to  
 1868 receiver, they cannot be included in the integrity check calculation; if they were, that

---

<sup>34</sup> HMAC-SHA-2 is used throughout the document to mean HMAC using a hash function from the SHA-2 family of hash functions specified in FIPS 180 [25].

value would then be different for the sender and the receiver. ESP also provides confidentiality protection through the use of encryption, encrypting the data. It does not encrypt the headers, since the header fields are used to correctly process and deliver the data as it traverses the Internet.

- 
- ESP can be used in transport mode and tunnel mode.
  - In tunnel mode, ESP provides encryption and integrity protection for an encapsulated IP packet, as well as integrity protection for the ESP header of the outer (constructed) IP packet.
  - In transport mode, ESP provides encryption and integrity protection for the payload of the IP packet, as well as integrity protection for the ESP header. Transport mode is not compatible with NAT. Transport mode can only be used for host-to-host deployments. It is commonly used for large scale host-to-host mesh deployments within an administrative domain without NAT.
- ESP in tunnel mode is the most commonly used IPsec mode because it can encrypt the entire original IP packet, which conceals the true source and destination of the packet. ESP in tunnel mode is a requirement for gateway-to-gateway communications. ESP in tunnel mode can be encapsulated in UDP and TCP, making it compatible with NAT.
- ESP can add padding to packets and send dummy packets, further complicating attempts to perform traffic analysis.
- ESP can use IPComp but rarely does because the gains made from data compression depend strongly on the type of traffic sent. Applications sending a lot of data typically compress their data before providing it to the lower layers for transmission. Applying IPComp to already compressed data would waste CPU power.
- AH has been obsoleted and should not be implemented or deployed. If encryption is undesirable, ESP with null encryption (ESP-NUL or AES-GMAC) should be used instead of AH.

## 1897 **5 Deployment of IPsec Using IKE**

1898 This section describes the interactions between the IKE and IPsec subsystems. The interaction  
 1899 depends on the implementation. This section describes the standard protocols used to  
 1900 communicate between IKE and IPsec. However, some devices have their own proprietary  
 1901 method of communication. In general, the concepts explained in this section will apply to those  
 1902 proprietary implementations as well.

1903 The IKE protocol is usually implemented as an application running on the operating system,  
 1904 whereas the IPsec protocol is generally implemented in the kernel of the operating system. Some  
 1905 devices implement the IPsec subsystem in userland, but for the remainder of this chapter it is  
 1906 assumed that IPsec is implemented in the kernel.

1907 The communication between IKE and IPsec is usually implemented using the PF\_KEYv2 [50] or  
 1908 NETLINK [51] protocol. Linux uses NETLINK with the XFRM application programming  
 1909 interface (API), whereas BSD-based systems use PF\_KEYv2.<sup>35</sup>

1910 This section puts IKE and IPsec components together to illustrate how IPsec sessions are set up  
 1911 and executed. Each example includes the use of IKE to establish SAs.

### 1912 **5.1 IPsec States and Policies**

1913 Each IPsec SA has a state and a policy. While each state must have a policy, not all policies need  
 1914 to have a state. For example, on-demand IPsec connections have a policy that allows the kernel  
 1915 to detect that an outgoing packet should trigger an IKE negotiation. Once the IKE SA has been  
 1916 established and an IPsec SA has been negotiated, the IKE daemon will install an IPsec state with  
 1917 corresponding policies. During the negotiation, the kernel can drop the packet, cache the packet  
 1918 for later transmission, or let the packet go out unencrypted. Usually UDP packets are dropped,  
 1919 since their unreliable nature requires that applications sending these packets need to know when  
 1920 to transmit their packets anyway. TCP packets are usually cached because TCP retransmissions  
 1921 are usually very slow, and it would make the on-demand tunnel very slow if the first TCP packet  
 1922 is always lost. Leaking packets in cleartext is only done when the network considers the IPsec  
 1923 protection optional instead of mandatory.

1924 Once an IPsec SA has been established between two hosts, all traffic that falls within the IPsec  
 1925 SA policy MUST be IPsec-protected. If for some reason unencrypted traffic is received, it is  
 1926 assumed to have been forged, and the traffic will be dropped.

#### 1927 **5.1.1 The Security Association Database (SAD)**

1928 The kernel maintains a state for each IPsec SA. An IPsec connection between two hosts consists  
 1929 of a pair of IPsec SAs, one for inbound and one for outbound traffic. These IPsec states are

---

<sup>35</sup> Linux uses the “ip xfrm” command, FreeBSD uses the “setkey” command, and OpenBSD uses the “ipsecctl” command.

1930 contained in the Security Association Database (SAD). Figure 12 shows an example of an IPsec  
 1931 SA using an AEAD algorithm.

```

1932 src 198.51.100.1 dst 203.0.113.1
1933   proto esp spi 0xba293cd3(3123264723) reqid 1(0x01) mode tunnel
1934   replay-window 32 seq 0x00000000 flag af-unspec (0x00100000)
1935   aead rfc4106(gcm(aes)) 0x2ee20e32be3017c1878b9ae514081ba1d[...] 128
1936   anti-replay context: seq 0x148a3, oseq 0x0, bitmap 0xffffffff
1937   lifetime config:
1938     limit: soft (INF)(bytes), hard (INF)(bytes)
1939     limit: soft (INF)(packets), hard (INF)(packets)
1940     expire add: soft 0(sec), hard 0(sec)
1941     expire use: soft 0(sec), hard 0(sec)
1942   lifetime current:
1943     102600783(bytes), 84090(packets)
1944     add 2019-01-06 21:57:45 use 2019-01-06 21:57:50
1945   stats:
1946     replay-window 0 replay 0 failed 0
1947
1948 src 203.0.113.1 dst 198.51.100.1
1949   proto esp spi 0x6273ec0a(1651764234) reqid 1(0x01) mode tunnel
1950   replay-window 32 seq 0x00000000 flag af-unspec (0x00100000)
1951   aead rfc4106(gcm(aes)) 0x0afaf19501d6d94174bb3036b84d59d78e[...] 128
1952   anti-replay context: seq 0x0, oseq 0x7829, bitmap 0x00000000
1953   lifetime config:
1954     limit: soft (INF)(bytes), hard (INF)(bytes)
1955     limit: soft (INF)(packets), hard (INF)(packets)
1956     expire add: soft 0(sec), hard 0(sec)
1957     expire use: soft 0(sec), hard 0(sec)
1958   lifetime current:
1959     2422796(bytes), 30761(packets)
1960     add 2019-01-06 21:57:45 use 2019-01-06 21:57:50
1961   stats:
1962     replay-window 0 replay 0 failed 0

```

1963 **Figure 12: Example of an ESP IPsec SA (Inbound and Outbound) Using an AEAD Algorithm on Linux**

1964 If a non-AEAD algorithm is used, such as AES-CBC with HMAC-SHA-1, the SA will contain  
 1965 the encryption and integrity keys separately. Figure 13 illustrates this. Note that this example  
 1966 uses FreeBSD, which calls the AES algorithm by its original candidate name, Rijndael.

```

1967 2001:db8:1:2::23 2001:db8:1:2::45
1968     esp mode=tunnel spi=1675186937(0x63d952f9) reqid=1(0x00000001)
1969     E: rijndael-cbc 1dd058ed 63905223 147979df 1865bfb3
1970     A: hmac-sha1 fde84c78 b2c90386 600927e3 1eb3dcf8 3163d053
1971     seq=0x00000000 replay=0 flags=0x00000000 state=mature
1972     created: Feb  2 17:29:42 2019    current: Feb  2 17:37:19 2019
1973     diff: 457(s)    hard: 3600(s)    soft: 2960(s)
1974     last:                                hard: 0(s)    soft: 0(s)
1975     current: 0(bytes)    hard: 0(bytes)    soft: 0(bytes)
1976     allocated: 0    hard: 0 soft: 0
1977     sadb_seq=1 pid=1404 refcnt=1
1978 2001:db8:1:2::45 2001:db8:1:2::23
1979     esp mode=tunnel spi=3301523791(0xc4c9414f) reqid=1(0x00000001)
1980     E: rijndael-cbc d32b7287 8e0ef003 3a2bac01 4b14d0c7
1981     A: hmac-sha1 1a3b1fc7 091e76f5 860456f2 5342ceaa bc33a3d3
1982     seq=0x00000000 replay=4 flags=0x00000000 state=mature
1983     created: Feb  2 17:29:42 2019    current: Feb  2 17:37:19 2019
1984     diff: 457(s)    hard: 3600(s)    soft: 2611(s)
1985     last:                                hard: 0(s)    soft: 0(s)
1986     current: 0(bytes)    hard: 0(bytes)    soft: 0(bytes)
1987     allocated: 0    hard: 0 soft: 0
1988     sadb_seq=0 pid=1404 refcnt=1

```

**Figure 13: Example of an ESP IPsec SA Using a Non-AEAD Algorithm on FreeBSD**

The IPsec SA state information consists of:

- The SPI that uniquely identifies the IPsec SA
- The IP addresses of the local and remote host that send and receive IPsec packets
- Cryptographic algorithms and their key material for encryption and integrity
- A link to the associated Security Policy (sometimes called reqid)
- The mode (tunnel or transport)
- The encapsulation state (transport protocol, port numbers, and optional framing)
- The current and maximum byte and packet counters allowed
- The current and maximum timers for idleness and age allowed
- Anti-replay context such as the current sequence number
- A link to the IPComp state if present
- Flags indicating various properties (TFC padding, etc.)

The maximum counters and lifetimes have a soft and hard value. When the soft value is reached, the kernel will notify the IKE daemon so it can take preventative action. When the hard value is reached, the IPsec SA is deleted by the kernel, and the IKE daemon is notified. Each time a packet is encrypted or decrypted, this state is updated appropriately.

## 5.1.2 The Security Policy Database (SPD)

The kernel maintains a list of IPsec policies in the Security Policy Database (SPD). The policy describes the nature of the traffic that matches a policy rule, and links it to the state used to



2009 encrypt or decrypt the packet. Policies without states are used for on-demand IPsec connections.  
 2010 Figure 14 shows examples of two policies corresponding to the SAs in Figure 12.

```

2011 src 192.168.13.6/32 dst 0.0.0.0/0
2012     dir out priority 1040383 ptype main
2013     tmpl src 198.51.100.1 dst 203.0.113.1
2014         proto esp reqid 1 mode tunnel
2015
2016 src 0.0.0.0/0 dst 192.168.13.6/32
2017     dir in priority 1040383 ptype main
2018     tmpl src 203.0.113.1 dst 198.51.100.1
2019         proto esp reqid 1 mode tunnel
2020

```

2021 **Figure 14: Examples of Policies Corresponding to Figure 12 on Linux**

2022 The IPsec Security Policy information consists of:

- 2023 • The IP addresses of the IPsec gateways
- 2024 • The source IP addresses allowed in classless inter-domain routing (CIDR) format
- 2025 • The destination IP addresses in CIDR format
- 2026 • The transport protocol covered (0 for all)
- 2027 • The source and destination port ranges (0 for all)<sup>36</sup>
- 2028 • A link to the associated SA state
- 2029 • Direction (inbound, outbound, or forward<sup>37</sup>)
- 2030 • Priority of the policy compared to other policy rules
- 2031 • IPsec protocol (ESP, AH, IPComp)
- 2032 • Mode (transport or tunnel)
- 2033 • IPComp information

2034 Using the SPD and SAD, packets are processed for encryption and decryption, and all the  
 2035 security policies are applied. If a policy violation is detected, the packet is dropped—for  
 2036 example, when an encrypted packet is decrypted into a packet with a source address that is not  
 2037 allowed by the Security Policy of the SA.<sup>38</sup> A policy can also point to a non-IPsec SA target.  
 2038 Commonly implemented targets are PASS (never encrypt with IPsec), DROP, REJECT (DROP  
 2039 and send an ICMP message), and HOLD (cache the packet until an IPsec SA has been  
 2040 established).

2041 Looking at the SAD and SPD entries of the previous figures, it can be seen that the host with IP  
 2042 address 198.51.100.1 is allowed to send ESP packets to the host with IP 203.0.113.1. The  
 2043 encrypted IP packet included can only have the source IP address 192.168.13.6 but can have any  
 2044 destination IP address. It is using AES-GCM as the AEAD encryption algorithm. In other words,

<sup>36</sup> For protocols without ports but with types, such as ICMP, the types are encoded as port numbers.

<sup>37</sup> Not all IPsec implementations have a forward policy. Think of it as a firewall within the IPsec subsystem.

<sup>38</sup> The SAD and SPD can be seen using the “ip xfrm” command on Linux. On BSD systems, the “setkey” tool can be used.

2045 there is a VPN client running on 198.51.100.1 that started a VPN connection to the VPN server  
 2046 on 203.0.113.1 and received the internal IP address 192.168.13.6.

2047 The IP address family of the IPsec host does not need to match the IP address family of the  
 2048 included encrypted IP packets. Figure 15 shows policies for two IPsec gateways using IPv6  
 2049 addresses that are used to connect two IPv4 subnets with each other.

```

2050 src 192.0.0.0/24 dst 192.0.2.0/24
2051     dir out priority 1042407 ptype main
2052     tmpl src 2001:db8:1:2::45 dst 2001:db8:1:2::23
2053         proto esp reqid 16389 mode tunnel
2054
2055 src 192.0.2.0/24 dst 192.0.0.0/24
2056     dir in priority 1042407 ptype main
2057     tmpl src 2001:db8:1:2::23 dst 2001:db8:1:2::45
2058         proto esp reqid 16389 mode tunnel
2059
  
```

2060 **Figure 15: Example of IPsec Policies for a Gateway Architecture Connecting IPv4 Subnets using IPv6 on**  
 2061 **Linux**

2062 The output of the commands to inspect the current SAD and SPD differs per vendor. Figure 16  
 2063 shows the SAD and SPD entries for an IPv6 in IPv4 IPsec connection in tunnel mode using the  
 2064 `ipsecctl` command on OpenBSD.

```

2065 FLOWS:
2066 flow esp in from 2001:db8:0:1::/64 to 2001:db8:0:2::/64
2067     peer 203.0.113.1 srcid FQDN/east dstid FQDN/west type use
2068 flow esp out from 2001:db8:0:2::/64 to 2001:db8:0:1::/64
2069     peer 203.0.113.1 srcid FQDN/east dstid FQDN/west type require
2070
2071 SAD:
2072 esp tunnel from 198.51.100.1 to 203.0.113.1 spi 0x03f86d3a
2073     auth hmac-sha2-256 enc aes-256
2074 esp tunnel from 203.0.113.1 to 198.51.100.1 spi 0x4df47d50
2075     auth hmac-sha2-256 enc aes-256
  
```

2076 **Figure 16: Example of IPsec States and Policies Connecting IPv6 Subnets using IPv4 on OpenBSD**  
 2077 **(line breaks added)**

### 2078 5.1.3 SAD Message Types

2079 Regardless of the implementation, the following types of messages are sent between the IKE and  
 2080 IPsec subsystems:

- 2081 • IKE to IPsec:
  - 2082 ○ Add, update, or remove an IPsec SA State
  - 2083 ○ Add, update, or remove an IPsec SA Policy
  - 2084 ○ Get IPsec SA information (byte counters, idleness)
  - 2085 ○ Request a list of supported IPsec cryptographic algorithms

- 2086 • IPsec to IKE:
- 2087     ○ Packet notification (with source/destination packet header information)
- 2088     ○ Invalid SPI notification (IPsec packet received without matching SA with SPI)
- 2089     ○ IPsec SA deleted (due to max life or max counter)
- 2090

## 2091 **5.2 Example of Establishing an IPsec Connection Using IKE**

2092 In this example, the goal is to establish an IPsec connection that provides encryption and  
 2093 integrity protection services between endpoints A and B. The IPsec architecture is gateway-to-  
 2094 gateway; endpoint A uses gateway A on network A, and endpoint B uses gateway B on network  
 2095 B. If an IKE SA is not already in place, a packet will trigger the establishment of an IKE SA. In  
 2096 IKEv2, this is accompanied by the establishment of an IPsec SA as well:

- 2097 1. Endpoint A creates and sends a regular (non-IPsec) packet that has a destination address  
 2098 of endpoint B.
- 2099 2. Network A routes the packet to gateway A.
- 2100 3. Gateway A matches the packet's characteristics against those in its SPD. It determines  
 2101 that the packet should be protected by encryption and integrity protection through ESP.  
 2102 Because the SPD entry does not have a pointer to the SAD, it knows that no IPsec SA is  
 2103 currently established.
- 2104 4. Gateway A initiates an IKE SA negotiation with Gateway B. At the end of the  
 2105 negotiation, the IKE SA has been established, along with all the parameters and keying  
 2106 material required for the IPsec SA.
- 2107 5. The parameters specify that ESP tunnel mode will be used and that it will provide  
 2108 encryption and integrity protection. A pair of unidirectional IPsec SAs is created for the  
 2109 ESP tunnel and added to the SAD. The IPsec SAs are attached to the SPD entries. Each  
 2110 SA provides protection only for traffic going in one direction.
- 2111 6. Gateway A can finish processing the packet sent by endpoint A in step 1.
- 2112 7. Gateway A modifies the packet so that it is protected in accordance with the SA  
 2113 parameters. It creates a new IP header that uses gateway A's IP address as the source IP  
 2114 address, and gateway B's IP address as the destination IP address. It sets the IP protocol  
 2115 to ESP and fills in the SPI number. It encrypts the original IP packet and includes this as  
 2116 the payload for this packet based on the encryption key of the SAD entry. It calculates  
 2117 and adds the integrity ICV to the ESP payload data based on the integrity key (or AEAD  
 2118 encryption key) of the SAD entry. Gateway A then sends the packet to Gateway B.
- 2119 8. Meanwhile, Gateway B has also installed the IPsec SAs along with the SPD rules.
- 2120 9. Gateway B receives the packet and uses the value in the unencrypted SPI field from the  
 2121 ESP header to determine which SA should be applied to the packet. After looking up the  
 2122 SA parameters (including the secret key(s) needed for integrity protection and  
 2123 decryption), gateway B decrypts and validates the packet. This includes removing the  
 2124 additional IP packet header, checking the integrity of the encrypted data, optionally

2125 performing a replay check, and decrypting the original payload. Gateway B checks the  
 2126 SPD entry associated with the SAD entry to ensure that the decrypted IP packet complies  
 2127 to any source or destination restrictions, then sends the packet to its actual destination,  
 2128 endpoint B.

2129 If endpoint B wishes to reply to the packet, steps 6 to 9 of this process are repeated, except the  
 2130 parties are switched. Endpoint B would send a packet to endpoint A; routing would direct it to  
 2131 gateway B. Gateway B would modify the packet appropriately and send it to gateway A.  
 2132 Gateway A would process and validate the packet to restore the original IP address, then send the  
 2133 packet to endpoint A.

2134 Assuming that the IPsec connection between the gateways is sustained, eventually the IKE or  
 2135 IPsec SAs will approach one of the SA lifetime thresholds (maximum time or maximum bytes  
 2136 transmitted) as determined by the local policy on the respective gateways. The gateway with the  
 2137 shortest lifetime determines first that the maximum SA lifetime is approaching and initiates the  
 2138 rekeying process using the existing IKE SA. If the IPsec SA is being rekeyed, both ends install  
 2139 the new inbound and outbound IPsec SA before removing the old inbound and outbound IPsec  
 2140 SA. Once valid encrypted traffic is received on the new inbound IPsec SA, the old inbound IPsec  
 2141 SA will be deleted. This ensures that there is no interruption of the traffic flow during IPsec SA  
 2142 rekeying. If the IKE SA is being rekeyed, both ends replace the IKE SA, and all IPsec SAs  
 2143 belonging to the old IKE SA are attached to the new IKE SA.

### 2144 **5.3 Procurement Considerations for IPsec Products**

2145 IPsec VPN products vary in functionality, including protocol and algorithm support. They also  
 2146 vary in breadth, depth, and completeness of features and security services. Management features  
 2147 such as status reporting, logging, and auditing should provide adequate capabilities for the  
 2148 organization to effectively operate and manage the IPsec VPN and to extract detailed usage  
 2149 information. In the case of mesh encryption, too much logging can also be a concern.  
 2150 Traditionally, the management of IPsec products from different vendors has been problematic.  
 2151 Some recommendations and considerations include the following:

- 2152 • Ensure that the cryptographic and networking capacity can accommodate the expected  
 2153 number of hosts and throughput.
- 2154 • The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) only provides a rudimentary and  
 2155 outdated interface for IKE and IPsec management. The IETF is working on a replacement  
 2156 management protocol using the YANG [52] data model language with ZEROCONF<sup>39</sup>,  
 2157 which should provide a non-proprietary management interface that can be used across all  
 2158 vendors.
- 2159 • AEAD algorithms such as AES-GCM for IPsec (ESP) significantly improve the  
 2160 performance of any IPsec product.

---

<sup>39</sup> A good history and summary of ZEROCONF can be found at <http://www.zeroconf.org/>.

- The IPsec VPN high availability, scalability, and redirection features should support the organization's requirements for automatic failover, where a secondary IPsec server is used as a spare that will automatically take over the IPsec services of a failing IPsec primary server. Or alternatively, support a deployment scenario where two IPsec servers perform load balancing for one logical IPsec service. State and information sharing are recommended to keep the IPsec server deployment process transparent to the user.
- IPsec VPN authentication should provide the necessary support for the organization's current and future authentication methods and leverage existing authentication databases. IPsec VPN authentication should also be tested to ensure interoperability with existing authentication methods. For remote access VPNs, support for EAP-TLS is an important consideration. For host-to-host and mesh encryption deployments, public key and certificate-based authentication is important.
- IPsec support within virtual machines or containers is usually provided by the operating system or container technology. This may require a different management system from physical IPsec gateway products. IPsec hardware offload needs careful consideration to ensure that the hardware offload capability is available within the virtualization technology without a performance penalty. In multi-tenant virtualization deployments, it might not be appropriate to use the hardware acceleration support, and support to disable hardware support should be available.
- Many IoT devices are severely resource constrained, requiring a very small footprint of supported algorithms and random-access memory (RAM) usage. These devices tend to not support certificate authentication, and usually support one or a few encryption and integrity algorithms, such as only AES-CCM. IPsec gateways that will be used to connect IoT devices should be selected carefully to ensure algorithm compatibility.
- IPsec products should be evaluated to ensure that they provide the level of granularity needed for access controls. Access controls should be capable of applying permissions to users, groups, and resources, as well as integrating with endpoint security controls. These considerations vary depending on the architecture that the IPsec product will be used for. Remote access VPNs need granularity at the user or device level, whereas host-to-host deployments could require access controls based on the IP address before accepting a connection based on proof of identity to prevent exposure to denial of service attacks.

## 6 Troubleshooting IPsec VPNs

This section provides information on troubleshooting IPsec VPNs.

### 6.1 IKE Policy Exceptions

A few IKE and IPsec interactions need some careful attention to prevent the two subsystems from interfering with each other. Usually these are handled by the IKE implementation. If an IPsec implementation insisted that all communication between two hosts be encrypted with IPsec, those two hosts would never be able to send non-IPsec packets, including IKE packets. And without allowing IKE packets, no IPsec SA can be negotiated and installed, and the two hosts would never be able to communicate. Similarly, if one host crashes and restarts, it needs to be able to send IKE packets that are not IPsec encrypted, yet the remote endpoint still has a policy that only allows encrypted traffic to be received.

To work around this, IPsec implements a policy exception for UDP port 500 and 4500 packets and will skip processing these via the regular SPD processing. If the kernel does not override IKE packets for IPsec processing, the IKE daemon needs to have a policy specifically for the IKE ports used with the highest preference, higher than the IPsec SA processing policy preference. Besides UDP port 500 and 4500, if TCP is used, those ports also need to have such a policy exception. Practically all IKE daemons perform this task on startup.

### 6.2 IPv6 Neighbor Discovery Policy Exception

A more subtle requirement is the need to exclude IPv6 neighbor discovery. If two hosts in the same subnet have established an IPsec SA over IPv6, and one of these hosts crashes and reboots, that host will send an unencrypted neighbor host discovery ICMP packet in an attempt to find the other host on the local network. If the host that did not crash drops the unencrypted ICMP packet, the two hosts will not be able to set up a new IPsec SA. If the host that did not crash performs DPD, it might find out in a few minutes that it needs to renegotiate the IPsec SA, otherwise communication will be blocked until the IPsec SA rekey or expiry timer runs out. This could be an outage that lasts anywhere between one and eight hours. Unfortunately, not all IKE daemons and IPsec implementations install the IPv6 neighbor discovery policy exception. It is recommended to test this scenario when using a new IKE/IPsec implementation.<sup>40</sup>

If a kernel receives a packet with an SPI for which it has no IPsec SA, it can send a message to the IKE process containing the IP address of the host that sent the IPsec packet. Such an IKE process may be able to recognize the peer based on its (static) IP address, and initiate a new IKE exchange to try and set up a new IPsec SA that replaces the obsoleted IPsec SA on the host that did not crash. Not all kernels implement this mechanism to inform the IKE process.

---

<sup>40</sup> To emulate, rather than actually crash a host, it is enough to send the IKE daemon a KILL signal, preventing it from telling the other side that it is shutting down, and then restart the IKE service.

### 6.3 Debugging IKE Configurations

The method for debugging IKE and IPsec configurations depends on the specific implementation. For new configurations that are not working properly, the first step should be for both endpoint administrators to verify the configuration options they believe they have agreed upon. A checklist with the most common options to check can be found in Appendix A. A mismatch between basic IKE or IPsec parameters is most often the cause for new IPsec configurations not establishing properly.

Using a network monitoring tool such as tcpdump is not very useful because only information from the first IKE\_SA\_INIT exchange can be inspected, and it only contains the DH groups, so it is unlikely that a misconfiguration can be detected at this point. All further captured IKE packets are encrypted, so they will not provide any additional information to diagnose the problem. It will be more helpful to enable additional logging or debugging. Remember to disable these settings again after the problem is resolved, otherwise large amounts of logs will continuously be produced.

If an administrator controls both endpoints that will be configured for IPsec, it is often the case that this administrator is sitting behind one of the gateways and is using a secure remote login tool, such as a web interface or SSH connection, to configure the remote endpoint. If a configuration mistake is made or a partial configuration is accidentally activated, the IPsec hosts will drop all non-IPsec traffic and lock out the administrator's remote session. To prevent this problem, use a third host to indirectly log in to the remote IPsec endpoint for configuration.

### 6.4 Common Configuration Mistakes

The HMAC integrity algorithm may be implemented with three different hash functions: SHA-256, SHA-384, and SHA-512. Different implementations use a different hash function for the "SHA2" indication that does not specify a specific hash function.

Care should be taken with sending DPD/liveness probes too often. If the remote client is a device that might enter sleep mode, it may not be able to respond to such probes. Another issue is when the device's link is congested while the IPsec connection is idle. This will trigger DPD/liveness probes that could be dropped due to traffic congestion. If repeatedly dropped, these packets will trigger a false positive warning about the remote IPsec endpoint connection being lost, causing the server to terminate the IKE and IPsec SA, resulting in more packets to re-establish the VPN on an already congested link. Do not set DPD/liveness probes to values under one minute, which matches the recommendation in [18].

PFS and DH group negotiation issues can be tricky to diagnose. In IKEv2, the first IPsec SA is established with the IKE SA establishment, and it does not really use a separate DH key exchange for PFS (unlike IKEv1). Any mismatch in DH group will only become apparent during a rekey message exchange hours later.

VPN gateways commonly are also used as NAT devices. If packets from the internal network are NAT'ed to the VPN server's public IP before being considered for IPsec protection, the source

2264 IP no longer matches the IPsec policy, and the packet will not be sent out via IPsec. Instead, it  
2265 could leak onto the internet without encryption, or be caught by the firewall subsystem running  
2266 on the VPN gateway.

2267 In an IPv4-based network, machines within the same subnet use the Address Resolution Protocol  
2268 (ARP) to find the Ethernet address belonging to a local IP address. If remote access clients are  
2269 being assigned IP addresses from the remote LAN, the VPN server needs to be configured to  
2270 answer for all IP addresses that are reachable via the IPsec VPN, since those remote VPN clients  
2271 do not receive the local network ARP requests. This service is often called *proxy ARP*. Some  
2272 IPsec implementations detect this automatically. For IPv6, this process is handled via IPv6  
2273 neighbor discovery, which would also need to be performed by the VPN server if the local IPv6  
2274 range would be used for remote access clients.

2275 The responder authenticates the initiator first, and fully establishes the IPsec SA before the  
2276 initiator receives the IKE\_AUTH response packet. If the initiator determines that the responder  
2277 failed to authenticate itself, it can only notify the responder of this by immediately deleting the  
2278 IKE SA, as the responder believes this is a fully established IKE SA and IPsec SA. This  
2279 sometimes confuses administrators when debugging a problem, because from the responder's  
2280 point of view, this was a successful—but very short—IPsec connection.

## 2281 **6.5 Routing-Based VPNs Versus Policy-Based VPNs**

2282 IPsec implementations need to inspect packet streams to determine when a packet should be  
2283 encrypted and when it should be transmitted unencrypted. One method is to use the routing table.  
2284 If a route is pointing to a specific IPsec device, the IPsec implementation processes the packet  
2285 based on its SPD/SAD rules. However, using routes can be fragile. Another subsystem could  
2286 change the routing to accidentally or maliciously bypass the IPsec device, thus bypassing all  
2287 encryption policies.

2288 Another issue of routing-based policies is that administrators often use a single IPsec policy from  
2289 all possible IPv4 addresses (0.0.0.0/0) to all possible IPv4 addresses (0.0.0.0/0). Once the tunnel  
2290 is established, routing is used to determine which packets to send over the IPsec connection. If a  
2291 remote branch extends its network to use another subnet, say, 192.0.2.0/24, the only change  
2292 needed is for the local branch to add a route for that IP range into the IPsec device. Firewall rules  
2293 to limit the subnets allowed are omitted to allow this easy type of deployment, but this introduces  
2294 a security problem as well as a compatibility problem. If the routes into the IPsec devices on both  
2295 ends do not match, traffic will be encrypted in one direction but not in the other. At best, the  
2296 IPsec gateway expecting encrypted packets will drop the unencrypted packets, and network  
2297 connectivity fails. Or worse, the IPsec gateway will mistakenly route the unencrypted (and  
2298 possibly modified) packets onto its local network.

2299 Policy-based VPNs covering only specific subnets and not every address (0.0.0.0/0) are a better  
2300 solution and recommended over routing-based VPNs, despite the additional management  
2301 overhead required. Depending on the implementation, policy-based VPNs can be a bit harder to  
2302 debug, since it might not be obvious to the administrator where in the IP stack a packet is taken  
2303 to be processed by the IPsec subsystem. This can lead to unexpected issues in hub-spoke



deployments. For example, if a host with LAN IP address 10.0.2.1 and public IP 192.0.2.1 creates an IPsec tunnel to a remote host on IP 192.0.2.2 to cover traffic between 10.0.2.0/24 and 10.0.0.0/8, such an IPsec gateway might lose access to its own LAN, since a packet with destination 10.0.2.13 will be sent over the IPsec tunnel because it falls within the destination IPsec policy range of 10.0.0.0/8. Routing-based VPNs do not have this issue, as LAN packets do not pass through the routing table and instead find the target host to send the packet to via ARP.

One common implementation processes the packets for IPsec after the network monitoring hooks are consulted. This leads to debugging tools such as the tcpdump tool seeing the packet as leaving the host unencrypted, while in fact the packet is encrypted after it is shown to the network debugging tool.

## **6.6 Firewall Settings**

The most common network issue when setting up IPsec is that a firewall on the VPN server or on the network is blocking the IKE ports, UDP 500 and 4500. If an IPsec connection works for simple ping commands, but not when an application is trying to use the IPsec connection, the cause is most likely due to broken path MTU discovery. While this problem is not directly related to IPsec, it is often triggered because of the extra overhead of the ESP header making each 1500-byte original packet larger than 1500 bytes after the ESP header is added. The ESP packets would fragment and, too often, some stateful router or firewall mistakenly drops these packets.

If the ESP packet contains a TCP packet, it can also cause problems with the Maximum Segment Size (MSS). For TCP to work properly, it needs to be able to send ICMP packets (Packet too big), but ICMP is often blocked. Some IPsec policies might only allow TCP packets and prohibit ICMP packets. This also commonly manifests itself as an administrator who can log in over the IPsec connection using the SSH protocol, but as soon as they try to actually use this session, their screen freezes. Decreasing the MTU of the IPsec interface can work around this issue. For TCP, a common workaround is to use TCP MSS clamping to the path MTU or to a fixed value (e.g., 1380).

## 7 IPsec Planning and Implementation

This section focuses on the planning and implementation of IPsec in an enterprise. As with any new technology deployment, IPsec planning and implementation should be addressed in a phased approach. A successful deployment of IPsec can be achieved by following a clear, step-by-step planning and implementation process. The use of a phased approach for deployment can minimize unforeseen issues and identify potential pitfalls early in the process. This model also allows for the incorporation of advances in new technology, as well as adapting IPsec to the ever-changing enterprise. This section explores each of the IPsec planning and implementation phases in depth, as follows:

1. **Identify Needs.** The first phase of the process involves identifying the need to protect network communications, determining which computers, networks, and data are part of the communications, and identifying related requirements (e.g., minimum performance). This phase also involves determining how that need can best be met (e.g., IPsec, TLS, SSH) and deciding where and how the security should be implemented.
2. **Design the Solution.** The second phase involves all facets of designing the IPsec solution. For simplicity, the design elements are grouped into four categories: architectural considerations, authentication methods, cryptography policy, and packet filters.
3. **Implement and Test a Prototype.** The next phase involves implementing and testing a prototype of the designed solution in a lab or test environment. The primary goals of the testing are to evaluate the functionality, performance, scalability, and security of the solution, and to identify any issues with the components, such as interoperability issues.
4. **Deploy the Solution.** Once the testing is completed and all issues are resolved, the next phase includes the gradual deployment of IPsec throughout the enterprise.
5. **Manage the Solution.** After the IPsec solution has been deployed, it is managed throughout its lifecycle. Management includes maintenance of the IPsec components and support for operational issues. The lifecycle process is repeated when enhancements or significant changes need to be incorporated into the solution.

Organizations should also implement other measures that support and complement IPsec implementations. These measures help to ensure that IPsec is implemented in an environment with the technical, management, and operational controls necessary to provide adequate security for the IPsec implementation. Examples of supporting measures are as follows:

- Establish and maintain control over all entry and exit points for the protected network, which helps to ensure its integrity.
- Ensure that all IPsec endpoints (gateways and hosts) are secured and maintained properly, which should reduce the risk of IPsec compromise or misuse.
- Revise organizational policies as needed to incorporate appropriate usage of the IPsec solution. Policies should provide the foundation for the planning and implementation of

2370 IPsec. Appendix B contains an extensive discussion of IPsec-related policy  
 2371 considerations.

## 2372 **7.1 Identify Needs**

2373 The purpose of this phase is to identify the need to protect communications and determine how  
 2374 that need can best be met. The first step is to determine which communications need to be  
 2375 protected (e.g., all communications between two networks, certain applications involving a  
 2376 particular server). The next step is to determine what protection measures (e.g., providing  
 2377 confidentiality, assuring integrity, authenticating the source) are needed for each type of  
 2378 communication. It is also important to identify other general and application-specific  
 2379 requirements, such as performance, and to think about future needs. For example, if it is likely  
 2380 that other types of communications will need protection in a year, those needs should also be  
 2381 considered.

2382 After identifying all the relevant needs, the organization should consider the possible technical  
 2383 solutions and select the one that best meets the identified needs. Although IPsec is typically a  
 2384 reasonable choice, other protocols such as TLS or SSH may be equally good or better in some  
 2385 cases. See Section 8 for descriptions of such protocols and guidance on when a particular  
 2386 protocol may be a viable alternative to IPsec. In some cases, IPsec is the only option—for  
 2387 example, if a gateway-to-gateway VPN is being established with a business partner that has  
 2388 already purchased and deployed an IPsec gateway for the connection. Another possibility is that  
 2389 the solution may need to support a protocol that is only provided by IPsec.

2390 Assuming that IPsec is chosen as the solution's protocol, the Identify Needs phase should result  
 2391 in the following:

- 2392 • Identification of all communications that need to be protected (e.g., servers, client hosts,  
 2393 networks, applications, data), and the protection that each type of communication needs  
 2394 (preferably encryption, integrity protection, and peer authentication)
- 2395 • Selection of an IPsec architecture (e.g., gateway-to-gateway, remote access VPN, host-to-  
 2396 host, mesh encryption)
- 2397 • Specification of performance requirements (normal and peak loads).

## 2398 **7.2 Design the Solution**

2399 Once the needs have been identified, and it has been determined that IPsec is the best solution,  
 2400 the next phase is to design a solution that meets the needs. This involves four major components,  
 2401 which are described in more detail in Sections 7.2.1 through 7.2.5:

- 2402 • **Architecture.** Designing the architecture of the IPsec implementation includes host  
 2403 placement (for host-to-host architectures)<sup>41</sup> and gateway placement (for remote access

---

<sup>41</sup> In most cases, the hosts are already placed on the network; the architectural considerations are focused on identifying intermediate devices between the hosts, such as firewalls performing NAT.

and gateway-to-gateway architectures), IPsec client software selection (for host-to-host and remote access architectures), and host address space management considerations (for host-to-host and remote access architectures).

- **Cryptography for Authentication.** The IPsec implementation must have an authentication method selected, such as the use of a digital signature or PSK. Only NIST-approved methods and algorithms shall be used. See NIST SP 800-131A [47].
- **Cryptography for Key Exchange, Confidentiality and Integrity.** The algorithms for DH key exchange, encryption, and integrity protection must be selected, as well as the key lengths for algorithms that support multiple key lengths. Only NIST-approved methods and algorithms shall be used. See NIST SP 800-131A [47].
- **Packet Filter.** The packet filter determines which types of traffic should be permitted and which should be denied, and what protection and compression measures (if any) should be applied to each type of permitted traffic (e.g., ESP tunnel using AES for encryption and HMAC-SHA-256 for integrity protection; Lempel-Ziv-Stac (LZS) for compression).

The decisions made regarding cryptography and packet filters are all documented in the IPsec policy. In its simplest form, an IPsec policy is a set of rules that govern the use of the IPsec protocol. It specifies the data to secure and the security method to use to secure that data. An IPsec policy determines the type of traffic that is allowed through IPsec endpoints, and generally consists of a packet filter and a set of security parameters for traffic that matches the packet filter. Those parameters include the authentication and encryption scheme and tunnel settings. When communications occur, each packet filter can result in the establishment of one or more IPsec SAs that enable protected communications satisfying the security policy for that packet filter.

Other decisions should also be made during the design phase, such as setting IKE and IPsec SA lifetimes and identifying which DH group number is best. Besides meeting the organization's cryptographic requirements of NIST SP 800-131A [47] and FIPS 140 [13], design decisions should incorporate the organization's logging and data management strategies, incident response and recovery plans, resource replication and failover needs, and current and future network characteristics, such as the use of wireless, NAT, and IPv6. Section 7.2.6 covers these considerations and design decisions in more detail.

### 7.2.1 Architecture

The architecture of the IPsec implementation refers to the selection of devices and software to provide IPsec services and the placement of IPsec endpoints within the existing network infrastructure. These two considerations are often closely tied together; for example, a decision could be made to use the existing Internet firewall as the IPsec gateway. This section will explore three particular aspects of IPsec architecture: gateway placement, IPsec client software for hosts, and host address space management.

### 2441 7.2.1.1 Gateway Placement

2442 Due to the layered defense strategy used to protect enterprise networks, IPsec gateway placement  
2443 is often a challenging task. As described later in this section, the gateway's placement has  
2444 security, functionality, and performance implications. Also, the gateway's placement may have  
2445 an effect on other network devices, such as firewalls, routers, and switches. Incorporating an  
2446 IPsec gateway into a network architecture requires strong overall knowledge of the network and  
2447 security policy. The following are major factors to consider for IPsec gateway placement:

- 2448 • **Device Performance.** IPsec can be computationally intensive, primarily because of  
2449 encryption and decryption. Providing IPsec services from another device (e.g., a firewall,  
2450 router) may put too high of a load on the device during peak usage, causing service  
2451 disruptions. A possible alternative is to offload the cryptographic operations to a  
2452 specialized hardware device, such as a network card with built-in cryptographic  
2453 functions. Organizations should also review their network architecture to determine if  
2454 bottlenecks are likely to occur due to network devices (e.g., routers, firewalls) that cannot  
2455 sustain the processing of peak volumes of network traffic that includes IPsec-  
2456 encapsulated packets.<sup>42</sup> For remote access architectures, the choice of DH group is  
2457 important because it is the most computationally demanding part of IKE.
- 2458 • **Traffic Examination.** If IPsec-encrypted traffic passes through a firewall, the firewall  
2459 cannot determine what protocols the packets' payloads contain, so it cannot filter the  
2460 traffic based on those protocols. Intrusion detection systems encounter the same issue;  
2461 they cannot examine encrypted traffic for attacks. However, it is generally recommended  
2462 to design the IPsec architecture so that a firewall and intrusion detection software can  
2463 examine the unencrypted traffic. Organizations most commonly address this by using  
2464 their Internet firewalls as VPN gateways or placing VPN gateway devices just outside  
2465 their Internet firewalls. A full mesh encryption bypasses all network-based firewalls and  
2466 intrusion detection systems because those systems can only accept or reject the encrypted  
2467 stream without being able to inspect the data that has been encrypted. This could mean a  
2468 reduction of security. This is discussed in greater detail in [54].
- 2469 • **Traffic Not Protected by IPsec.** Organizations should consider carefully the threats  
2470 against network traffic after it has been processed by the receiving IPsec gateway and  
2471 sent without IPsec protection across additional network segments. For example, an  
2472 organization that wants to place its VPN gateway outside its Internet firewalls should  
2473 ensure that the traffic passing between the IPsec gateway and the Internet firewalls has  
2474 sufficient protection against breaches of confidentiality and integrity.
- 2475 • **Gateway Outages.** The architecture should take into consideration the effects of IPsec  
2476 gateway outages, including planned maintenance outages and unplanned outages caused  
2477 by failures or attacks. For example, if the IPsec gateway is placed inline near the Internet  
2478 connection point, meaning that all network traffic passes through it, a gateway failure  
2479 could cause a loss of all Internet connectivity for the organization. Also, larger IPsec

---

<sup>42</sup> The network architecture review is also beneficial in identifying intermediate network devices that may need to be reconfigured to permit IPsec traffic to pass through.

implementations may use a gateway management server; a server failure could severely impact the management of all gateways. Generally, if the network is designed to be redundant, the IPsec gateways and management servers should also be designed to be redundant.

- **NAT.** NAT provides a mechanism to use private addresses on the internal network while using public addresses to connect to external networks. NAT can map each private address to a different public address, while the network address port translation (NAPT) variant of NAT can map many private addresses to a single public address, differentiating the original addresses by assigning different public address ports.<sup>43</sup> NAT is often used by enterprises, small offices, and residential users that do not want to pay for more IP addresses than necessary or wish to take advantage of the security benefits and flexibility of having private addresses assigned to internal hosts. Unfortunately, as described in Section 4, there are known incompatibilities between IPsec and NAT because NAT modifies the IP addresses in the packet, which directly violates the packet integrity assurance provided by IPsec. However, there are a few solutions to this issue, as follows:
  - **Perform NAT before applying IPsec.** This can be accomplished by arranging the devices in a particular order, or by using an IPsec gateway that also performs NAT. For example, the gateway can perform NAT first and then IPsec for outbound packets. This is sometimes required because an IPsec service provider with multiple customers cannot build tunnels to each customer using the same internal IP addresses, and thus requires their customers to use specific RFC 1918 [35] IP addresses.
  - **Use UDP or TCP encapsulation of ESP packets.** Encapsulation requires tunnel mode. Encapsulation adds a UDP or TCP header to each packet, which provides an IP address and UDP/TCP port that can be used by NAT (including NAPT). This removes conflicts between IPsec and NAT in most environments.<sup>44</sup> IKE negotiates the use of encapsulation. During the IKE initial exchanges, both endpoints perform NAT discovery to determine if NAT services are running between the two IPsec endpoints. NAT discovery involves each endpoint sending a hash of its original source address(es) and port to the other endpoint, which compares the original values to the actual values to determine if NAT was applied. IKE then moves its communications from UDP port 500 to port 4500 in order to avoid inadvertent interference from NAT devices that perform proprietary alterations of IPsec-related activity. Detection of NAT and the use of encapsulation can also cause the host behind the NAT device to send keepalive packets to the other endpoint, which should keep the NAPT port-to-address mapping from being lost. Although all IKEv2 implementations must support UDP

---

<sup>43</sup> Additional information on NAT and NAPT is available from [53].

<sup>44</sup> In some cases, either the network architecture or the type of traffic may require additional measures to allow IPsec traffic to negotiate NAT successfully. For example, protocols such as Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) for Voice over IP (VoIP) and File Transfer Protocol (FTP) have IP addresses embedded in the application data. Handling such traffic correctly in NAT environments may require the use of application layer gateways (ALGs).

2517 encapsulation, TCP encapsulation is a recent addition that has not yet reached  
 2518 universal support in IPsec devices.

### 2519 **7.2.1.2 Third-Party IPsec Client Software for Hosts**

2520 In IPsec host-to-host and remote access architectures, each host must have an IPsec-compliant  
 2521 implementation installed and configured. Most operating systems on computers and mobile  
 2522 devices have built-in support for IPsec and only require configuration or an enterprise  
 2523 provisioning system that provides and installs the required configurations. However, some  
 2524 mobile devices or embedded devices do not have a built-in IPsec implementation. Also, some  
 2525 built-in clients might be lacking a feature required for a certain deployment or might not support  
 2526 an enterprise provisioning system. In such cases, a third-party client might need to be deployed  
 2527 instead. Third-party clients must be distributed and installed, then configured or provisioned.<sup>45</sup>

2528 Features that may be of interest when evaluating IPsec client software include support for the  
 2529 following:

- 2530 • IKEv2
- 2531 • IKEv1 (if communicating to legacy equipment)
- 2532 • IKEv2 fragmentation
- 2533 • IKEv2 encapsulation (UDP, TCP, or TCP-TLS)
- 2534 • IKEv2 PPK
- 2535 • Particular encryption, integrity protection, and compression algorithms
- 2536 • Particular authentication methods such as EAP-TLS, RSA, and ECDSA
- 2537 • Multiple simultaneous tunnels<sup>46</sup>
- 2538 • Authentication support for hardware tokens utilizing Open Authorization (OAuth), OTP,  
 2539 or Fast Identity Online (FIDO)
- 2540 • Flexible X.509 certificates and optional IPsec Extended Key Usage (EKU) restrictions
- 2541 • CRL and/or OCSP support
- 2542 • Certificate uniform resource indicator (URI) and raw keys for embedded clients
- 2543 • DNSSEC provisioning of enterprise trust anchors

2544 Another important IPsec client feature is the ability to allow or prevent split tunneling. Split  
 2545 tunneling occurs when an IPsec client on an external network is not configured to send all its

---

<sup>45</sup> Organizations deploying third-party clients should pay particular attention to mobile devices and application stores. On some mobile phone platforms, many questionable VPN implementations are being made available where the goal of the VPN service is to monitor and/or modify the user's traffic before it is protected by IPsec.

<sup>46</sup> In some cases, it may be desirable to permit a host to establish multiple tunnels simultaneously. For example, the host may perform two types of communications that each need different protective measures from IPsec.

2546 traffic to the organization's IPsec gateway. Requests with a destination on the organization's  
2547 network are sent to the IPsec gateway, and all other requests are sent directly to their destination  
2548 without going through the IPsec tunnel. The client host is effectively communicating directly and  
2549 simultaneously with the organization's internal network and another network (typically the  
2550 Internet). If the client host were compromised, a remote attacker could connect to the host  
2551 surreptitiously and use its IPsec tunnel to gain unauthorized access to the organization's network.  
2552 This would not be possible if the IPsec client software had been configured to prohibit split  
2553 tunneling. However, any compromise of an IPsec client host is problematic, because an attacker  
2554 could install utilities on the host that capture data, passwords, and other valuable information.

2555 Prohibiting split tunneling can limit the potential impact of a compromise by preventing the  
2556 attacker from taking advantage of the IPsec connection to enter the organization's network; the  
2557 attacker could only connect to the compromised system when it is not using IPsec. However,  
2558 many hosts have multiple methods of connectivity, such as mobile data, wired LAN, and  
2559 wireless LAN; if an attacker can connect to a network interface other than the one used for IPsec,  
2560 it may be possible to use the IPsec tunnel even if split tunneling is prohibited. This can allow  
2561 access to a more trusted network—the network protected by IPsec—from a less trusted network,  
2562 such as an improperly secured wireless LAN. Accordingly, hosts should support being  
2563 configured so that only the network interface used for IPsec is enabled when IPsec is in use.  
2564 Some VPN clients can be configured to disable other network interfaces automatically. An  
2565 alternative is to configure a personal firewall on the host so that it blocks unnecessary and  
2566 unauthorized network traffic on all interfaces. Due to its security complications/risks, split  
2567 tunneling is strongly discouraged.

2568 As described in Section 7.2.6, not allowing split tunneling is also helpful in preventing IPsec  
2569 clients' hosts from being compromised. If a user mistakenly tries to connect to a malicious site,  
2570 the traffic would be forced to go through the VPN where an enterprise firewall or proxy server  
2571 could filter malicious traffic. Some organizations prefer split tunneling because it prevents non-  
2572 enterprise traffic from reaching the enterprise. It also reduces the internet bandwidth capacity  
2573 needed by the enterprise to support its remote VPN clients. There might also be legal reasons  
2574 why an enterprise prefers not to handle traffic unrelated to its organization.

2575 There are other factors that may differentiate IPsec clients. For example, one client may provide  
2576 substantially better performance than another client or consume less of the host's resources.  
2577 Another consideration is the security of the client software itself, such as how frequently  
2578 vulnerabilities are identified, and how quickly patches are available. Client interoperability with  
2579 other IPsec implementations is also a key concern; some client implementations only  
2580 interoperate with their own vendor's gateway implementation or with a limited number of other  
2581 vendors' gateway implementations. It is critical to ensure that the selected client will interoperate  
2582 with each gateway implementation it might encounter. Section 7.3.1 discusses this topic in more  
2583 detail.

2584 Organizations should also carefully consider how clients can be provisioned with IPsec client  
2585 software and configuration settings, including policies. Many clients offer different features that  
2586 can make client deployment, configuration, and management easier. For example, an  
2587 administrator might be able to set policy for clients remotely, instead of manually visiting each



host. Some clients offer administrators the ability to lock out or disable certain configuration options or functionality so that users cannot inadvertently or intentionally circumvent the intended security. If administrators cannot distribute pre-configured IPsec clients or remotely control IPsec configuration settings, the administrators might need to manually configure each IPsec client or rely on users to follow instructions and configure the clients themselves. The latter approach is often challenging for non-technical users.

### 7.2.1.3 Host Address Space Management

In remote access VPN architectures where the hosts are outside the organization (e.g., mobile devices, remote workers), the VPN client will receive an additional IP address from the organization's address space assigned as a virtual IP address to each external IPsec host. In the latter case, the client then establishes an IPsec connection that uses its real IP address in the external packet headers (so the IPsec-encapsulated packets can be routed across public networks) and its virtual IP address in the internal packet headers (so the packets can be routed across the organization's internal networks and treated as internally generated).

Virtual addresses can be assigned from an address pool that resides on the VPN server. The VPN server can also use the DHCP Relay protocol or use an AAA service such as RADIUS or Diameter to obtain an IP address. A local pool can provide an easier indication that the IP address accessing a local resource is originating from a VPN client or is a client connecting from a certain region.

It is important to ensure that any addresses the IPsec gateway manages are excluded from the ranges that other internal DHCP servers can assign to avoid address conflicts. Some vendors provide internal address assignment and authentication using proprietary functionality. This may present compatibility issues depending on the products being used.

When deploying a remote access VPN in a data center or cloud where the only service offered is the VPN server without any other local resources, non-routable IP addresses such as those defined in RFC 1918 [35] can be used for the address pool of virtual IPs for the VPN clients. The VPN server then uses NAT to translate these IP addresses to its own public IP address. One potential issue with such a deployment is that some websites limit the number of users or connections coming from a single IP address. If dozens or hundreds of website users appear to all come from the one VPN server public IP address, the website might block the IP address because it assumes it is a malicious entity that obtained the credentials of many users. Using multiple public IP addresses on such a VPN server deployment could mitigate this problem.

### 7.2.2 IKE Authentication

The endpoints of a host-to-host and gateway-to-gateway IPsec architecture typically use the same authentication method to validate each other. Validation for remote access VPNs tend to use different mechanisms to authenticate each other, where the server is authenticated using a machine certificate and clients are authenticated using EAP-TLS.

IPsec implementations typically support a number of authentication methods. The most common methods are certificate-based digital signatures or raw public keys, EAP, and PSK. When using IKEv1, a group PSK combined with a username and password is also common. This section discusses the primary advantages and disadvantages of these methods.

PSKs should only be used for gateway-to-gateway scenarios that cross an administrative domain and only when based on generating strong and sufficiently long random PSKs with at least 112 bits of entropy. Using a public-key key pair (with or without certificates) based on RSA, DSA or ECDSA is preferred over using PSKs, but if the implementations that need to interoperate do not share the same public key-based authentication method, PSKs are an appropriate alternative. Within an administrative domain, PSKs should not be used. For remote access VPN scenarios, EAP-TLS or machine certificate authentication should be used.

#### **7.2.2.1 PSKs**

To use PSKs, the IPsec administrator needs to create a strong random secret key or password string that is then configured in both IPsec devices (the end points) of an IPsec connection.<sup>47</sup> PSKs are the simplest authentication method to implement, but also by far the least secure. Administrators need to find IPsec products that provide key management capabilities for PSKs or implement their own key management mechanisms, such as generating, storing, deploying, auditing, and destroying keys; proper key management can be quite resource-intensive. Although it is easiest to create a single key that all endpoints share, this causes problems when a host should no longer have access—the key then needs to be changed on all other hosts. PSKs should also be updated periodically to reduce the potential impact of a compromised key. Another issue is that the key must be kept secret and transferred over secure channels. Individuals with access to an endpoint are almost always able to gain access to the PSK.<sup>48</sup> Depending on the key type, this could grant access from one, some, or all IP addresses. (A group shared key can only be used from addresses in a certain range, while a wildcard shared key can be used from any IP address.) Also, using the same key for a group of endpoints reduces accountability, as anyone within the group can impersonate another member of the group.

Because of scalability and security concerns, PSK authentication is generally an acceptable solution only for small-scale implementations with known IP addresses or small IP address ranges. The use of a single PSK for a group of hosts is strongly discouraged for all but the most highly-controlled environments, such as a group of secure routers. PSKs are also generally not recommended for remote access clients that have dynamic IP addresses, because the keys cannot be restricted to a particular IP address or small range of IP addresses. PSKs are also frequently used during initial IPsec testing and implementation because of their simplicity. After the IPsec implementation is operating properly, the authentication method can then be changed.

---

<sup>47</sup> Because PSKs are often long strings of random characters, manually typing them in to the endpoints can cause problems from typos.

<sup>48</sup> Some vendors protect stored PSKs using obfuscation, but since unattended access to these secrets is needed when booting up the system, this obfuscation is usually trivially broken.

### 2660 7.2.2.2 Certificate-based digital signatures

2661 Certificates are typically used in machine certificate and EAP-TLS based authentication. The  
2662 certificate owner produces a digital signature of the IKE exchange that proves its possession of  
2663 the certificate's private key and authenticates the IKE session.

2664 A certificate identifies each device, and each device is configured to use certificates. User-  
2665 specific certificates may be used instead of device-specific certificates, but some remote access  
2666 VPN configurations do not allow a single user to log onto multiple devices simultaneously, so it  
2667 is always better to generate a certificate per device rather than per user.

2668 Two IPsec endpoints will trust each other if a CA they both trust has signed their certificates.<sup>49</sup>  
2669 The certificates must be securely stored in the local certificate store on the IPsec hosts and  
2670 gateways or on a secure hardware token. Using a certificate-based method allows much of the  
2671 key administration to be offloaded to a central certificate server, but still requires IPsec  
2672 administrators to perform some key management activities, such as provisioning hosts with  
2673 credentials, either through IPsec vendor-provided features or IPsec administrator-created  
2674 capabilities. Many organizations implement a public key infrastructure (PKI) for managing  
2675 certificates for IPsec VPNs and other applications such as secure email and Web access.<sup>50</sup>  
2676 Certificates can be issued to limit their use using EKU attributes. Some IPsec hosts insist on  
2677 IPsec-specific EKUs, while others accept the TLS-based EKUs (serverAuth or clientAuth) and  
2678 some ignore all EKUs. The IETF PKI standard for IKE EKUs is specified in RFC 4945 [55]. A  
2679 certificate issued for secure email might not be usable for IPsec on some of the VPN gateways  
2680 deployed in an organization. Issuing certificates per device instead of per user avoids this issue  
2681 and has the additional advantage that if a device is lost or stolen, not all of the user's VPN access  
2682 will need to be revoked.

2683 Although the certificate authentication method scales well to large implementations and provides  
2684 a much stronger security solution than PSKs, it does have some disadvantages. While certificates  
2685 can be revoked and transmitted to the VPN servers via CRLs [57] in bulk, or on demand via  
2686 OCSP) [58], typically these mechanisms provide no option for temporarily disabling a  
2687 certificate. Additional complications can occur when the connection to the OCSP server itself is  
2688 down, or worse, requires an IPsec tunnel to be negotiated that needs to use that OCSP server.  
2689 Non-standard solutions using an AAA server or a Pluggable Authentication Module (pam  
2690 authentication) are usually added for such use cases.

2691 Another potential problem with the certificate authentication method involves packet  
2692 fragmentation. Packets in an IKE negotiation are typically relatively small and do not need to be  
2693 fragmented. By adding certificates to the negotiation, packets may become so large that they  
2694 need to be fragmented, which is not supported by some IPsec implementations.

---

<sup>49</sup> This describes the most common CA model; other models, such as the Federal Bridge CA, function somewhat differently.

<sup>50</sup> PKI implementations require a considerable investment in time and resources. It is outside the scope of this document to discuss a PKI in detail. See NIST SP 800-32, *Introduction to Public Key Technology and the Federal PKI Infrastructure*, for more information [56].

### 2695 **7.2.2.3 Raw public key digital signatures**

2696 Raw public key digital signatures work the same as certificate-based digital signatures, except  
2697 instead of trusting a certificate (directly or indirectly via a CA), the trust is placed in the public  
2698 key itself. Keys are usually represented in base64 format or using just the SubjectPublicKeyInfo  
2699 (SPKI) part of a certificate.

2700 Public keys can be distributed to the endpoints via trusted provisioning software or can be  
2701 fetched on demand from DNSSEC or a directory service (e.g., Lightweight Directory Access  
2702 Protocol [LDAP]) based on the ID presented during the IKE exchange. Instead of specifying the  
2703 validity period in a certificate, these publishing services can simply remove the key when it is no  
2704 longer needed. The public key for a particular ID specified in IKE resides in the DNS or  
2705 directory service under that ID name. Revocation is accomplished by removing the public key  
2706 from the publishing service's database.

2707 For resource-constrained embedded devices that authenticate using a single hard-coded public  
2708 key, a certificate by itself can be too large to be contained or operated on and serves no purpose  
2709 since certificate validation is not performed.

2710 One disadvantage of raw public keys is that there are not as many tools that support these,  
2711 because most IKE implementations have been written to be used with certificates or PSKs.

### 2712 **7.2.2.4 EAP**

2713 EAP support is included in IKEv2. Both older and newer EAP methods are supported. EAP can  
2714 be used as the only authentication method, or as a second authentication method. Often, different  
2715 authentication methods are used: the server is authenticated using certificate-based  
2716 authentication, and the client (typically a laptop or mobile device) is authenticated using an EAP  
2717 method. EAP authentication allows additional types of authentications to be used, such as a  
2718 username with a password (EAP-MSCHAPv2), a user (not host) certificate (EAP-TLS), or an  
2719 EAP method supporting two-factor authentication. EAP authentication is mostly used for laptops  
2720 and mobile phones.

### 2721 **7.2.3 Cryptography for Confidentiality Protection, Integrity Protection and Key** 2722 **Exchange**

2723 Setting the cryptographic policy for confidentiality and integrity protection and key exchange  
2724 involves choosing encryption and integrity protection algorithms, key lengths,<sup>51</sup> DH groups for  
2725 key exchange, and IKE and ESP lifetimes. For up-to-date policies and advice on these settings,  
2726 see NIST SP 800-131A [47] and FIPS 140 [13] as well as the recommendations of the IETF for  
2727 IKE [20] and ESP [59]. Note that these documents will be updated over time or be obsoleted for  
2728 newer publications.

---

<sup>51</sup> Only FIPS-validated implementations of NIST-approved algorithms shall be used.

2729 The IKE protocol sends just a few packets per hour, so it makes sense to be extra cautious and  
2730 pick strong algorithms with large enough keys, and specifically a strong DH group. Approved  
2731 DH groups are identified in NIST SP 800-56A [62]. The bulk of the CPU power of an IPsec host  
2732 will be spent on IPsec, not IKE. In IKE, the most CPU-intensive operation is the DH calculation.  
2733 When an IPsec host has hundreds or thousands of IKE (re)connections, choosing the right DH  
2734 group becomes very important.

2735 It is recommended to use strong key sizes for IKE. The performance impact of larger key sizes is  
2736 minimal because IKE traffic is negligible compared to IPsec traffic. For IPsec (ESP), the key  
2737 size can have a significant impact on performance. In general, use larger key sizes for IPsec if  
2738 performance is not an issue. For ESP, the choice of algorithms for confidentiality and integrity  
2739 protection should also take performance into account. Using an AEAD algorithm such as AES-  
2740 GCM that can provide both confidentiality and integrity protection in a single operation will give  
2741 better performance than using non-AEAD algorithms that require separate operations (e.g., AES-  
2742 CBC for encryption and HMAC for integrity protection). It is important to estimate the  
2743 processing resources that the cryptographic computations will require during peak usage.

2744 It is uncommon to use 192-bit AES keys, and this key length is optional in [20]. It is worth  
2745 mentioning as well that in the future, an adversary with a quantum computer may be able to  
2746 reduce the key strength of an AES key by a factor of two, in which case a 256-bit AES key may  
2747 effectively provide around 128 bits of security in the quantum computer world (note that this  
2748 level of security strength is a magnitude stronger than the current level of 128 bits for classical  
2749 security).

2750 AES-GCM (an AEAD algorithm) is often offloaded to hardware, making it significantly faster  
2751 than AES-CBC (a non-AEAD algorithm). The CPU is typically the hardware component most  
2752 affected by cryptographic operations. In some cases, a hardware-based cryptographic engine  
2753 with customized CPUs, also known as a cryptographic accelerator, may be needed for greater  
2754 throughput, but this may limit the algorithm options. Another potential issue is export restrictions  
2755 involving the use of encryption algorithms in certain countries.<sup>52</sup> In addition, some IPsec  
2756 components may not provide support for a particular algorithm or key size.

2757 For integrity checking of non-AEAD algorithms, most IPsec implementations offer HMAC-  
2758 SHA-1 or the HMAC with the SHA-2 hashing algorithms<sup>53</sup> (referred to as the HMAC-SHA2s).  
2759 Even though HMAC-SHA1 is still a NIST-approved option, the HMAC-SHA2s are  
2760 recommended due to the fact that the HMAC-SHA2s have stronger security than HMAC-SHA1.  
2761 HMAC-MD5 has never been a NIST-approved algorithm and shall not be used.

2762 In some implementations of IPsec, the cryptographic policy settings are not immediately  
2763 apparent to administrators. The default settings for encryption and integrity protection, as well as  
2764 the details of each setting, are often located down several levels of menus or are split among  
2765 multiple locations. It is also challenging with some implementations to alter the settings once

---

<sup>52</sup> More information on export restrictions is available from the Bureau of Industry and Security, U.S. Department of Commerce, at <https://www.bis.doc.gov/index.php/policy-guidance/encryption>.

<sup>53</sup> HMAC-SHA256, HMAC-384 or HMAC-SHA-512.

2766 they have been located. For example, by having portions of the settings in multiple locations,  
2767 administrators may need to go back and forth between different configuration screens to ensure  
2768 that the settings are correct and consistent.

## 2769 **7.2.4 High Speed and Large Server Considerations**

2770 While network devices such as routers and firewalls will already be optimized for network  
2771 performance, generic operating systems will require tuning for optimized network performance.  
2772 Enough RAM should be made available to the network stack. CPU power saving and throttling  
2773 should be disabled and, on non-uniform memory access (NUMA) systems, further optimizations  
2774 might be possible. Check with the hardware vendor for specific instructions.

2775 Network card settings can also have a large impact on throughput. Check that the network card's  
2776 transmit queue (txqueuelen) is set large enough to accommodate the amount of traffic. Check the  
2777 network card settings for TCP Segmentation Offload (TSO), Generic Segmentation Offload  
2778 (GSO), checksum offloading, and virtual local area network (VLAN) settings. If using a network  
2779 card with IPsec hardware acceleration support, follow the vendor's instructions on how to  
2780 optimize the host.

2781 When using virtualization, ensure that the virtualization layer is using as much direct hardware  
2782 access as possible. For performance, it will be better to configure a hardware network card inside  
2783 a virtual machine than to configure the virtual machine with a virtual network card. On some  
2784 hardware, this needs to be enabled in the Basic Input/Output System (BIOS). For example, on  
2785 Intel systems, ensure that Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O (Intel VT-d) is  
2786 enabled. Ensure that the virtualization is not emulating a slightly different CPU than the real  
2787 hardware because it will not be able to use the hardware virtualization instructions of the CPU  
2788 and instead will have to perform full emulation in software.<sup>54</sup>

2789 Ideally, when not using IPsec, the system should be able to utilize line-speed unencrypted traffic.  
2790 A popular network tool to perform network performance tests is *iperf*. Once the system is  
2791 performing well without IPsec, IPsec can be enabled.

2792 IPsec hosts that are busy will spend the bulk of their computational resources on encrypting and  
2793 decrypting ESP traffic. The performance of the algorithms for IKE is less important, as there are  
2794 far fewer IKE packets than ESP packets in most deployments of IPsec VPNs.

### 2795 **7.2.4.1 ESP performance considerations**

2796 If the host's CPU usage is the limiting factor, it is particularly important to use the right  
2797 algorithms. Using an AEAD algorithm for encryption and integrity protection is much faster than  
2798 using two non-AEAD algorithms. Likely the best algorithm choice will be AES-GCM because  
2799 modern CPUs have hardware support for it. Both 256-bit and 128-bit AES keys currently

---

<sup>54</sup> This usually happens when a virtual machine configuration with a specific CPU sub-type is migrated to different hardware without the configuration being updated.

2800 provide strong protection, so when CPU load becomes an issue, one could consider switching  
2801 from 256-bit to 128-bit keys, provided that this is allowed by the deployment policy.

2802 If the host is running a few high-speed IPsec SAs, it could be that multiple CPUs on the host are  
2803 not utilized properly to spread the cryptographic load of a single IPsec SA over multiple CPUs.  
2804 When multiple CPUs are used for a single IPsec SA, there will be an increase in out-of-order  
2805 packets being sent, and the replay-window will need to be increased to accommodate this at both  
2806 endpoints. IPsec replay-protection can be disabled to test if that is the limiting factor for the  
2807 server performance. This is less of a concern on busy servers that act as a remote access VPN,  
2808 since these will be serving many users' IPsec SAs per CPU. For high-speed IPsec SAs, it is also  
2809 important to use ESNs to avoid excessive rekeying.

2810 If the application is sending packets close to the MTU size, using ESP encryption (which adds a  
2811 few bytes in size compared to the unencrypted packet size) might lead to fragmentation, which  
2812 will reduce performance. If the IPsec SA is a connection within a data center or over a dedicated  
2813 fiber cable, it might be possible to increase the MTU (e.g., to 9000 bytes) to prevent  
2814 fragmentation. The MTU of the internal-facing network card can also be reduced to force the  
2815 LAN to send packets that are smaller than 1500 bytes, so once the host encrypts the packet to  
2816 send it out over the external interface, the ESP packet will not exceed an MTU of 1500 bytes.  
2817 TCP MSS clamping can be used on both IPsec endpoints to ensure that TCP sessions will use a  
2818 lower MTU that prevents fragmentation.

#### 2819 **7.2.4.2 IKE performance considerations**

2820 While IKE performance in most cases does not matter, it does matter for remote access VPN  
2821 servers that have a continuous stream of clients connecting and disconnecting. If IKE uses too  
2822 much of the CPU resources, this will impact ESP processing times as well. If a remote access  
2823 VPN server is too busy and has degraded to the point where an IKE session takes more than a  
2824 few seconds to establish, the server will completely collapse under the load. IKE clients usually  
2825 timeout after five to ten seconds and will start a new IKE attempt. This will put even more load  
2826 on the already loaded server. That is, the load based on the number of IKE clients connecting  
2827 will slowly go up until it hits a breaking point. If the IKE REDIRECT [38] extension is  
2828 supported, the server can be configured to start redirecting clients to another server before it  
2829 becomes too busy. See Section 3.8 for more information.

2830 The most computationally expensive part of IKE is the DH calculation performed during a key  
2831 exchange. DH implemented using ECP groups (elliptic curve group modulo a prime) take less  
2832 resources than the use of finite field groups (modular exponential, or MODP groups) such as DH  
2833 group 14. The DH 19, DH 20, and DH 21 ECP groups are also considered to be more secure  
2834 [61]. DH groups 1, 2, 5, and 22 are not NIST-approved because these groups do not supply the  
2835 minimum of 112 bits of security. See NIST SP 800-56A [62] for further information about  
2836 approved DH groups.

2837 MOBIKE should be enabled on remote access VPN servers. Mobile devices will switch between  
2838 WiFi and mobile data, and without MOBIKE, this requires a new IKE session for each network  
2839 switch. This will increase the number of DH calculations that need to be supported. IKE clients

2840 on unreliable WiFi can end up restarting IKE many times. When MOBIKE is used, an encrypted  
2841 informational exchange message is sent to modify the existing IKE and ESP sessions to use the  
2842 new IP address of the other interface and avoid starting new sessions with new expensive DH  
2843 group calculations.

2844 Liveness<sup>55</sup> probes can be used by a server to detect remote clients that have vanished without  
2845 sending a delete notification. The timer for these probes should not be set too short, or else the  
2846 server will need to send frequent IKE packets with DPD probes for idle IKE clients. If the  
2847 timeout value is set very short (in the order of a few seconds), there is the additional risk of IKE  
2848 clients on unreliable networks not receiving the DPD probes. The server will disconnect the IKE  
2849 client when a response to the probe is not returned. That client will experience packet loss and  
2850 declare the IPsec connection dead. This will lead to the creation of another new IKE session and  
2851 an increased load on the VPN server. In general, keeping a few IKE and IPsec states alive for  
2852 vanished VPN clients is cheap. It takes very little memory and no CPU resources. A reasonable  
2853 DPD timeout value is in the range of 10 to 60 minutes.

2854 The IKE SA and IPsec SA lifetimes are not negotiated. Each endpoint decides when it wants to  
2855 rekey or expire an existing SA. Using longer IKE SA and IPsec SA lifetimes can reduce the  
2856 amount of IKE rekeying required. IKE rekeying and IPsec rekeying with PFS require a new DH  
2857 calculation as well, so extending the IKE and IPsec lifetimes can help reduce the server load.

2858 Another option on busy servers with many remote access users is to support IKE session  
2859 resumption [63]. A mobile device that is going to sleep can send the server a sleep notification to  
2860 prevent DPD-based disconnections. The server and client keep the cryptographic state of the IKE  
2861 session. When the device wakes up, it can send an encrypted session resumption request. This  
2862 avoids the need for a new IKE session with the expensive DH calculation to establish a new  
2863 connection; the server is triggered via a DPD timeout to delete the IKE and IPsec SA if the sleep  
2864 period exceeds the timeout period.

2865 If a provisioning system is used to generate and install configurations for the IKE clients,  
2866 optimized settings could be pushed automatically to all IKE clients to ensure optimal  
2867 performance. This would avoid manual configurations that, when performed by inexperienced  
2868 users, could result in less optimized settings because the user did not enable or disable certain  
2869 features.

2870 Enabling IKE debugging can cause a lot of logging data to be generated. That in itself can cause  
2871 a significant performance impact on the system. Always check to see if debugging has  
2872 accidentally been left enabled on systems experiencing a high work load.

#### 2873 **7.2.4.3 IKE denial of service attack considerations**

2874 DDoS attacks are a separate issue of concern. Such attacks also put an additional load on the  
2875 server, but the characteristics are different from a legitimate user load.

---

<sup>55</sup> This was formerly called Dead Peer Detection (DPD).



2876 An attack from an authenticated user with valid credentials is assumed to be a readily solvable  
2877 problem—simply revoke such users’ access to the VPN infrastructure. One exception to this is  
2878 when anonymous IPsec is in use, because in that case, the connection cannot be terminated or  
2879 prevented based on the user credentials. Vendors of IPsec equipment supporting anonymous  
2880 IPsec connections should take countermeasures, for example by limiting the number of IPsec SA  
2881 requests that are accepted or by limiting the number of rekeys or anonymous connections  
2882 allowed based on an IP address.

2883 IKEv2 has built-in protection against DDoS attacks, but IKEv1 does not. When the number of  
2884 incomplete IKE sessions (sometimes called half-open IKE SAs) reaches a threshold, indicating a  
2885 possible DDoS attack, IKEv2 can enable DDoS COOKIES. Each new IKE\_SA\_INIT request  
2886 will be answered with a reply that only contains a COOKIE based on a local secret<sup>56</sup> and the  
2887 client’s IP address and port. The client will have to resend its original IKE\_SA\_INIT request  
2888 with the COOKIE added to the request. The server can calculate the value of the COOKIE  
2889 without needing to store any state in memory for the original IKE\_SA\_INIT request. The IKE  
2890 server will only perform the expensive DH calculations after the client has retransmitted its  
2891 IKE\_SA\_INIT packet with the COOKIE, proving to the server that the client was not simply a  
2892 spoofed IP packet.

2893 Additionally, IKEv1 can be coerced into an amplification attack. With IKEv1, the responder and  
2894 initiator are each responsible for retransmission when a packet is lost. A malicious user can send  
2895 a single spoofed IKEv1 packet to an IKEv1 server and cause that IKEv1 server to send several  
2896 retransmit packets to the spoofed IP address. Some IKEv1 implementations defend against this  
2897 by never responding more than once to an initial IKEv1 request, but this can break legitimate  
2898 IKEv1 clients using Aggressive Mode when there is actual packet loss happening.

## 2899 **7.2.5 Packet Filter**

2900 The purpose of the packet filter is to specify how each type of incoming and outgoing traffic  
2901 should be handled—whether the traffic should be permitted or denied (usually based on IP  
2902 addresses, protocols, and ports), and how permitted traffic should be protected (if at all). By  
2903 default, IPsec implementations typically provide protection for all traffic. In some cases, this  
2904 may not be advisable for performance reasons. Encrypting traffic that does not need protection or  
2905 is already protected (e.g., encrypted by another application) can be a significant waste of  
2906 resources. For such traffic, the packet filter could specify the use of the null encryption algorithm  
2907 for ESP, which would provide integrity checks and anti-replay protection, or the packet filter  
2908 could simply pass along the traffic without any additional protection. One caveat is that the more  
2909 complex the packet filter becomes, the more likely it is that a configuration error may occur,  
2910 which could permit traffic to traverse networks without sufficient protection.

---

<sup>56</sup> The secret is usually a random value refreshed every hour to prevent attackers from attempting to guess the secret by trying different possibilities until the correct value is found. The server needs to remember the current and previous secret and to perform two calculations so that clients caught at a secret refresh will not be locked out. [rephrase “caught”]

An issue related to packet filters is that certain types of traffic are incompatible with IPsec. For example, IPsec cannot negotiate security for multicast and broadcast traffic.<sup>57</sup> This means that some types of applications, such as multicast-based video conferencing, may not be compatible with IPsec. Attempting to use IPsec to secure such traffic often causes communication problems or impairs or breaks application functionality. Other traffic such as multicast DNS (mDNS) and DNS Service Discovery (DNS-SD) broadcast requests should not be forwarded to other networks because they have no meaning or relevance beyond the local network. For example, ICMP error messages are often generated by an intermediate host such as a router, not a tunnel endpoint; because the source IP address of the error message is the intermediate host's address, these ICMP packets do not have confidentiality or integrity protection, and the receiving host cannot make security policy decisions based on unprotected packets. Packet filters should be configured to not apply IPsec protection to types of traffic that are incompatible with IPsec—they should let the traffic pass through unprotected if that does not compromise security. If the IPsec gateway cannot block broadcasts and other traffic that should not be passed through it, it may also be effective to configure firewalls or routers near the IPsec gateway to block that particular type of traffic.

## 7.2.6 Other Design Considerations

A particularly important consideration in design decisions is the identification and implementation of other security controls. Organizations should have other security controls in place that support and complement the IPsec implementation. For example, organizations should configure packet filtering devices (e.g., firewalls, routers) to restrict direct access to IPsec gateways. Organizations should have policies in place regarding the acceptable usage of IPsec connections and software. Organizations may also set minimum security standards for IPsec endpoints, such as mandatory host hardening measures and patch levels, and specify security controls that must be employed by every endpoint.

For endpoints outside the organization's control, such as systems belonging to business partners, users' home computers, and public internet access networks, organizations should recognize that some of the endpoints might violate the organization's minimum security standards. For example, some of these external endpoints might be compromised by malware and other threats occasionally; malicious activity could then enter the organization's networks from the endpoints through their IPsec connections. To minimize risk, organizations should restrict the access provided to external endpoints as much as possible, and also ensure that policies, processes, and technologies are in place to detect and respond to suspicious activity. Organizations should be prepared to identify users or endpoint devices of interest and disable their IPsec access rapidly as needed.

IPsec packet filters can be helpful in limiting external IPsec endpoints' accesses to the organization. Using packet filters to limit acceptable traffic to the minimum necessary for untrusted hosts, along with other network security measures (e.g., firewall rulesets, router access control lists), should be effective in preventing certain types of malicious activity from reaching

---

<sup>57</sup> Section 10.1 contains information on current research efforts to create IPsec solutions for multicast traffic.

their targets. Administrators may also need to suspend access temporarily for infected hosts until appropriate host security measures (e.g., antivirus software update, patch deployment) have resolved the infection-related issues. Another option in some environments is automatically quarantining each remote host that establishes an IPsec connection, checking its host security control settings, and then deciding if it should be permitted to use the organization's networks and resources. It is advisable to perform these checks not only for hosts connecting to the organization's VPN from external locations, but also for mobile systems connecting to the organization's internal network that are also sometimes connected to external networks.

In addition to endpoint security, there are many other possible design considerations. The following items describe specific IPsec settings not addressed earlier in this section:

- **SA Lifetimes.** The IPsec endpoints should be configured with lifetimes that balance security and overhead.<sup>58</sup> In general, shorter SA lifetimes tend to support better security, but every SA creation involves additional overhead. In IKEv1, the appropriate lifetime is somewhat dependent on the authentication method—for example, a short lifetime may be disruptive to users in a remote access architecture that requires users to authenticate manually, but not disruptive in a gateway-to-gateway architecture with automatic authentication. IKEv2 also decouples rekeying from reauthentication, so rekeying can be performed more frequently without affecting the user. During testing, administrators should set short lifetimes (perhaps 5 to 10 minutes) so the rekeying process can be tested more quickly. In operational implementations, IPsec SA lifetimes should generally be set to a few hours, with IKE SA lifetimes set somewhat higher. A common default setting for IKE SAs is a lifetime of 24 hours (86400 seconds), and for IPsec SAs a lifetime of 8 hours (28800 seconds). It is important to ensure that the peers are configured with compatible lifetimes; some configurations will terminate an IKE negotiation if the peer uses a longer lifetime than its configured value. Some IKEv2 implementations, especially minimum IKEv2 implementations used with embedded devices, might not support the CREATE\_CHILD\_SA exchange, and therefore do not support rekeying without reauthentication.
- **IKE Version.** IKEv2 should be used instead of IKEv1 where possible. If using IKEv1, the aggressive mode (see RFC 2409 [94] for detail) should be avoided because it provides much weaker security compared to main mode.
- **Diffie-Hellman Group Number.** DH group numbers 14, 15, 16, 17, and 18 [64], 19, 20, and 21 [61] are NIST-approved groups. The DH group 22 is not a NIST-approved option because it provides less than 112 bits of security; see [47]. The ECP DH groups 19, 20, and 21 are preferred for security and performance reasons. The DH group used to establish the secret keying material for IKE and IPsec should be consistent with current security requirements for the strength of the encryption keys generated by the IKE KDF.

---

<sup>58</sup> In most cases, lifetimes should be specified by both time and bytes of traffic so that all SAs, regardless of the volume of traffic, have a limited lifetime. Organizations should not specify a lifetime by bytes of traffic only, because an SA that is not used or used lightly might exist indefinitely.

- 2987 • **Extra Padding.** As described in Section 4.1.5, ESP packets can contain optional padding  
2988 that alters the size of the packet to conceal how many bytes of actual data the packet  
2989 contains, which is helpful in deterring traffic analysis. Having larger packets increases  
2990 bandwidth usage and the endpoints' processing load for encrypting and decrypting  
2991 packets, so organizations should only use extra padding if traffic analysis is a significant  
2992 threat (in most cases, it is not) and costs are not an important factor.
- 2993 • **Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS).** Because the PFS option provides stronger security, it  
2994 should be used unless the additional computational requirements of the additional DH  
2995 key exchanged would pose a problem. For IPsec servers with permanent IPsec tunnels,  
2996 this is usually not a problem, but a remote access VPN with thousands of users might  
2997 experience additional work load if PFS is enabled on all VPN clients.

2998 Design decisions should incorporate several other considerations, as described below:

- 2999 • **Current and Future Network Characteristics.** This document has already described  
3000 issues involving the use of NAT. Organizations should also be mindful of other network  
3001 characteristics, such as the use of IPv6 and wireless networking, when designing an IPsec  
3002 implementation. For example, if the organization is planning on deploying IPv6  
3003 technologies in the near future, it may be desirable to deploy an IPsec solution that  
3004 supports IPv4 in IPv6 and IPv6 in IPv4 configurations as well as an IPv6-only mode.
- 3005 • **Incident Response.** Organizations should consider how IPsec components may be  
3006 affected by incidents and create a design that supports effective and efficient incident  
3007 response activities. For example, if an IPsec user's system is compromised, this should  
3008 necessitate canceling existing credentials used for IPsec authentication, such as revoking  
3009 a digital certificate or deleting a PSK.
- 3010 • **Log Management.** IPsec should be configured so it logs sufficient details regarding  
3011 successful and failed IPsec connection attempts to support troubleshooting and incident  
3012 response activities. IPsec logging should adhere to the organization's policies on log  
3013 management, such as requiring copies of all log entries to be sent through a secure  
3014 mechanism to centralized log servers and preserving IPsec gateway log entries for a  
3015 certain number of days.
- 3016 • **Redundancy.** Organizations should carefully consider the need for a robust IPsec  
3017 solution that can survive the failure of one or more components. If IPsec is supporting  
3018 critical functions within the organization, the IPsec implementation should probably have  
3019 some duplicate or redundant components. For example, an organization could have two  
3020 IPsec gateways configured so that when one gateway fails, users automatically switch  
3021 over to the other gateway (assuming that the gateways support such a failover capability).  
3022 Redundancy and failover capabilities should be considered not only for the core IPsec  
3023 components, but also for supporting systems such as authentication servers and directory  
3024 servers.

## 7.2.7 Summary of Design Decisions

Table 2 provides a checklist that summarizes the major design decisions made during the first two phases of the IPsec planning and implementation process.

**Table 2: Design Decisions Checklist**

Completed	Design Decision
Identify Needs (Section 7.1)	
	Determine which communications need to be protected
	Determine what protective measures are needed for each type of communication
	Select an IPsec architecture
	Identify other current and future requirements
	Consider the possible technical solutions and select the one that best meets the identified needs
Design the Solution—Architecture (Section 7.2.1)	
	Determine where IPsec hosts and gateways should be located within the network architecture
	Select appropriate IPsec client software for hosts
	Determine whether split tunneling should be permitted
	Determine whether IPsec hosts should be issued virtual IP addresses
Design the Solution—IKE Authentication (Section 7.2.2)	
	Decide which authentication methods should be supported
Design the Solution—Cryptography (Section 7.2.3)	
	Set the cryptographic policy
Design the Solution—High Speed and Large Server Considerations (Section 7.2.4)	
	Tune the operating system for optimized network performance
Design the Solution—Packet Filter (Section 7.2.5)	
	Determine which types of traffic should be permitted and denied
	Determine what protection and compression measures (if any) should be applied to traffic
Design the Solution—Other Design Considerations (Section 7.2.6)	
	Select maximum lifetimes for IKE and IPsec SAs
	Choose IKEv2 or IKEv1. If using IKEv1, choose between main or aggressive mode
	Select an appropriate DH group number for each chosen encryption algorithm and key size
	Determine whether extra padding should be used to thwart traffic analysis
	Enable PFS if it would not negatively impact performance too much

## 7.3 Implement and Test Prototype

After the solution has been designed, the next step is to implement and test a prototype of the design. This could be done in one or more environments, including lab, test, and production networks.<sup>59</sup> Aspects of the solution to evaluate include the following:

<sup>59</sup> Ideally, implementation and testing should first be performed with a lab network, then a test network. Only implementations

- 3033 • **Connectivity.** Users can establish and maintain connections that use IPsec for all types of

3034 traffic that are intended to be protected by IPsec and cannot establish connections for

3035 traffic that IPsec is intended to block. It is important to verify that all of the protocols that

3036 need to flow through the connection can do so. This should be tested after initial SA

3037 negotiation as well as after the original SAs have expired and new IKE and IPsec SAs

3038 have been negotiated. (During testing, it may be helpful to temporarily shorten the SA

3039 lifetimes so that renegotiation occurs more quickly.) Connectivity testing should also

3040 evaluate possible fragmentation-related issues for IKE (e.g., certificates) and ESP (e.g.,

3041 TCP flow issues).
- 3042 • **Protection.** Each traffic flow should be protected in accordance with the information

3043 gathered during the Identify Needs phase. This should be verified by monitoring network

3044 traffic and checking IPsec endpoint logs to confirm that the packet filter rules are

3045 ensuring that the proper protection is provided for each type of traffic.
- 3046 • **Authentication.** Performing robust testing of IKE authentication is important because if

3047 authentication services are lost, IPsec services may be lost as well. Authentication

3048 solutions such as using digital signatures may be complex and could fail in various ways.

3049 See Section 7.2.2 for more information on IKE authentication.
- 3050 • **Application Compatibility.** The solution should not break or interfere with the use of

3051 existing software applications. This includes network communications between

3052 application components, as well as IPsec client software issues (e.g., a conflict with host-

3053 based firewall or intrusion detection software).
- 3054 • **Management.** Administrators should be able to configure and manage the solution

3055 effectively and securely. This includes all components, including gateways, management

3056 servers, and client software. For remote access architectures, it is particularly important

3057 to evaluate the ease of deployment and configuration. For example, most

3058 implementations do not have fully automated client configuration; in many cases,

3059 administrators manually configure each client. Another concern is the ability of users to

3060 alter IPsec settings, causing connections to fail and requiring administrators to manually

3061 reconfigure the client, or causing a security breach.
- 3062 • **Logging.** The logging and data management functions should function properly in

3063 accordance with the organization's policies and strategies.
- 3064 • **Performance.** The solution should be able to provide adequate performance during

3065 normal and peak usage. Performance issues are among the most common IPsec-related

3066 problems. It is important to consider not only the performance of the primary IPsec

3067 components, but also that of intermediate devices, such as routers and firewalls.

3068 Encrypted traffic often consumes more processing power than unencrypted traffic, so it

3069 may cause bottlenecks.<sup>60</sup> Also, because IPsec headers and tunneling increase the packet

---

in final testing should be placed onto a production network. The nature of IPsec allows a phased introduction on the production network as well.

<sup>60</sup> The additional resources necessitated by IPsec vary widely based on several factors, including the IPsec mode (tunnel or

length, intermediate network devices might need to fragment them, possibly slowing network activity.<sup>61</sup> In many cases, the best way to test the performance under load of a prototype implementation is to use simulated traffic generators on a live test network to mimic the actual characteristics of expected traffic as closely as possible. Testing should incorporate a variety of applications that will be used with IPsec, especially those that are most likely to be affected by network throughput or latency issues, such as Voice Over IP.<sup>62</sup> Addressing performance problems generally involves upgrading or replacing hardware, offloading cryptographic calculations from software-based cryptographic modules to hardware-based cryptographic modules, or reducing processing needs (e.g., using a more efficient encryption algorithm or only encrypting sensitive traffic).

- **Security of the Implementation.** The IPsec implementation itself may contain vulnerabilities and weaknesses that attackers could exploit. Organizations with high security needs may want to perform extensive vulnerability assessments against the IPsec components. At a minimum, the testers should update all components with the latest patches and configure the components following sound security practices. Section 7.3.2 presents some common IPsec security concerns.
- **Component Interoperability.** The components of the IPsec solution must function together properly. This is of the greatest concern when a variety of components from different vendors may be used. Section 7.3.1 contains more information on interoperability concerns.
- **Default Settings.** Besides the IPsec settings described in Section 7.2, IPsec implementations may have other configuration settings. IPsec implementers should carefully review the default values for each setting and alter the settings as necessary to support their design goals. They should also ensure that the implementation does not unexpectedly “drop back” to default settings for interoperability or other reasons.

### 7.3.1 Component Interoperability

Another facet of testing to consider is the compatibility and interoperability of the IPsec components. Although there have been improvements in the industry, especially with IKEv2-based IPsec implementations, some vendors make it difficult to interoperate with, or manage, other IPsec devices. Because many vendors offer IPsec clients and gateways, implementation differences among products and the inclusion of proprietary solutions can lead to interoperability problems. Although IPsec vendors use the term “IPsec compliant” to state that they meet the current IETF IPsec standards, they may implement the standards differently, which can cause subtle and hard-to-diagnose problems. Also, some products provide support for components (e.g., encryption algorithms) that are not part of the IPsec standards; this is done for various

---

transport), the encryption algorithm, and the use of IPComp, UDP encapsulation, or optional padding.

<sup>61</sup> Similar problems can occur when tunnels are within other tunnels, so that packets are encapsulated multiple times. Typically, the solution for these types of problems is to reduce the size of the MTU value on the host originating the network traffic. The MTU is the maximum allowable packet size. The MTU can be lowered so the IPsec-encapsulated packets are not large enough to require fragmentation.

<sup>62</sup> For more information on Voice Over IP, see [66].

3105 reasons, including enhancing ease-of-use, providing additional functionality, and addressing  
3106 weak or missing parts of the standards. Examples of compatibility issues are as follows:

- 3107       • The endpoints support different encryption algorithms, compression algorithms, or  
3108       authentication methods.
- 3109       • One endpoint requires the usage of a proprietary feature for proper operation.
- 3110       • The endpoints may encode or interpret certain digital certificate fields or data differently.
- 3111       • The endpoints default to different parameters, such as DH group 14 versus DH group 19.
- 3112       • The endpoints implement different interpretations of ambiguous or vaguely worded  
3113       standards, such as performing SA rekeying in different ways.
- 3114       • Most gateway implementations interoperate with other vendors' implementations, but  
3115       many client implementations only interoperate with their own vendor's gateway  
3116       implementation.

3117 The following are some IKE-related interoperability issues:

- 3118       • **Certificate Contents.** Different implementations may encode or interpret certificate data  
3119       fields (e.g., peer identity) differently, or handle certificate extensions such as EKU  
3120       extensions in conflicting ways. Some vendors have also implemented sending  
3121       intermediary certificates in a non-standard way.
- 3122       • **Rekeying Behavior.** When implementations re-negotiate IKE or IPsec SAs, different  
3123       rekeying behavior can result in lost traffic. One potential area of difficulty is timing-  
3124       related: when to start using the new SA and when to delete the old SA. In addition, when  
3125       an IKEv1 SA expires, some implementations delete all IPsec SAs that were negotiated  
3126       using that IKEv1 SA. Other implementations allow the IPsec SAs to continue until they,  
3127       in turn, expire. This can also cause interoperability problems. In IKEv1, an expired IKE  
3128       SA leaving an IPsec SA can also no longer send or respond to DPD packets. IKEv2  
3129       resolved these issues by specifying that the deletion of an IKE SA causes the deletion of  
3130       all its IPsec SAs.
- 3131       • **Initial Contact Messages.** Some implementations send an Initial Contact notification  
3132       message when they begin an IKE negotiation with a peer for whom they have no current  
3133       SAs. This can also be an indication that the sending implementation has rebooted and lost  
3134       previously negotiated SAs. There can be incompatibility issues if one implementation  
3135       sends and expects to receive this message, and the other one has not implemented this  
3136       feature.
- 3137       • **Dead Peer Detection (DPD).** DPD enables an endpoint to ensure that its peer is still able  
3138       to communicate. This can help the endpoint to avoid a situation in which it expends  
3139       processing resources to send IPsec-protected traffic to a peer that is no longer available.  
3140       If no traffic is sent through an SA, some implementations will delete the SA, even if the  
3141       negotiated lifetime has not elapsed. DPD messages can be sent to ensure that an  
3142       otherwise unused SA is kept alive. This can avoid NAT mapping timeouts and the  
3143       deletion of inactive SAs.



- **Vendor ID.** One endpoint may depend upon a proprietary custom Vendor ID IKE payload to enable a feature that is either absent or inconsistently implemented. This has led some vendors to include Vendor IDs of other vendors in their product to gain compatibility with the other vendor. This can lead to unexpected side effects when one vendor adds a different customization that is activated when the same Vendor ID value is seen.
- **Lifetimes.** Peers may be configured with different values for IKE or IPsec SA lifetimes. IKEv2 allows the sending of the maximum accepted authentication lifetime, so a client connecting to a server will be told within which period of time it is supposed to re-authenticate.

In IKEv1, a misconfiguration of the mode (transport or tunnel) or compression would lead to a failure in establishing the IPsec SA. With IKEv2, transport mode and compression can only be requested. If not confirmed, the IPsec SA must be established in tunnel mode or without compression.

The best way to determine interoperability between vendors is to actually test them in a lab environment. Another approach is to research issues with the products by using Web sites that provide interoperability testing configuration and results, as well as the ability to perform real-time testing.

### 7.3.2 Security of the Implementation

Another topic to keep in mind during testing is the security of the IPsec implementation itself. IPsec was built with careful thought and consideration for security; however, no protocol or software is completely bulletproof. Security concerns regarding IPsec include the following:

- Some IPsec implementations store PSKs in plain text on the system. This can be accessed by legitimate users and anyone else who gains access to the system. The use of such implementations should be avoided if unauthorized physical access to the system is a concern. However, if it is necessary to use such a product, be sure to apply the appropriate system hardening measures and deploy host-based firewalls and intrusion detection software.
- IPsec allows some traffic to pass unprotected, such as broadcast, multicast, IKE, and Kerberos. Attackers could potentially use this knowledge to their advantage to send unauthorized malicious traffic through the IPsec filters. Be sure to carefully monitor the traffic that is passing through the IPsec tunnel, as well as that which is bypassing it. For example, network-based intrusion detection system or intrusion prevention system devices can typically be configured to alert when non-tunneled traffic appears.
- Periodically, vulnerabilities are discovered in IPsec implementations. Organizations such as the United States Computer Emergency Readiness Team (US-CERT) notify vendors of new vulnerabilities and, at the appropriate time, also notify the public of the issues and the recommended resolutions, such as installing vendor-supplied patches. Information on known vulnerabilities is provided by various online databases, including the National

3183 Vulnerability Database (NVD)<sup>63</sup> and the Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE)  
 3184 database.<sup>64</sup>

## 3185 **7.4 Deploy the Solution**

3186 Once testing is complete and any issues have been resolved, the next phase of the IPsec planning  
 3187 and implementation model involves deploying the solution. A prudent strategy is to gradually  
 3188 migrate existing network infrastructure, applications, and users to the new IPsec solution. The  
 3189 phased deployment provides administrators an opportunity to evaluate the impact of the IPsec  
 3190 solution and resolve issues prior to enterprise wide deployment. Most of the issues that can occur  
 3191 during IPsec deployment are the same types of issues that occur during any large IT deployment.  
 3192 Typical issues that are IPsec-specific are as follows:

- 3193 • Encrypted traffic can negatively affect services such as firewalls, intrusion detection,  
 3194 QoS, remote monitoring (RMON) probes, and congestion control protocols.
- 3195 • Unexpected performance issues may arise, either with the IPsec components themselves  
 3196 (e.g., gateways) or with intermediate devices, such as routers.
- 3197 • IPsec may not work properly on some production networks because of firewalls, routers,  
 3198 and other intermediate packet filtering devices that block IPsec traffic. For example, the  
 3199 devices might have been misconfigured for IPsec traffic or not configured at all—for  
 3200 example, if the IPsec implementers were not aware of the existence of a device.  
 3201 Misconfigured devices are more likely to be an issue with organizations that use a wider  
 3202 variety of network devices or have decentralized network device administration and  
 3203 management. In such environments, the changes needed to permit IPsec could vary  
 3204 widely among devices.
- 3205 • The environment may change during the deployment. For example, IPsec client software  
 3206 may be broken by a new operating system update. This issue can be handled rather easily  
 3207 in a managed environment, but it can pose a major problem if users have full control over  
 3208 their systems and can select their own client software.

## 3209 **7.5 Manage the Solution**

3210 The last phase of the IPsec planning and implementation model is the longest lasting. Managing  
 3211 the solution involves maintaining the IPsec architecture, policies, software, and other  
 3212 components of the deployed solution. Examples of typical maintenance actions are testing and  
 3213 applying patches to IPsec software, deploying IPsec to additional remote sites, configuring  
 3214 additional user laptops as IPsec clients, performing key management duties (e.g., issuing new  
 3215 credentials, revoking credentials for compromised systems or departing users) and adapting the  
 3216 policies as requirements change. It is also important to monitor the performance of the IPsec  
 3217 components so that potential resource issues can be identified and addressed before the  
 3218 components become overwhelmed. Another important task is to perform testing periodically to

---

<sup>63</sup> <https://nvd.nist.gov/>

<sup>64</sup> <https://cve.mitre.org/>

verify that the IPsec controls are functioning as expected. Any new hardware, software, or significant configuration changes starts the process again at the Identify Needs phase. This ensures that the IPsec solution lifecycle operates effectively and efficiently.

Another aspect of managing the IPsec solution is handling operational issues. For example, a common problem is poor performance caused by undesired fragmentation or by not utilizing enough resources (e.g., other available CPUs or sufficient memory) to perform networking tasks. When troubleshooting IPsec connections, a network sniffer such as tcpdump or Wireshark can be very helpful. A sniffer allows the administrator to analyze the communications as they take place and correct problems. IPsec gateway logs and client logs may also be valuable resources during troubleshooting; firewall and router logs may validate whether the IPsec traffic is reaching them, passing through them, or being blocked.

## 7.6 Summary

This section has described a phased approach to IPsec planning and implementation and highlighted various issues that may be of significance to implementers. The following summarizes the key points from the section:

- The use of a phased approach for IPsec planning and implementation can help to achieve successful IPsec deployments. The five phases of the approach are as follows:
  1. **Identify Needs**—Identify the need to protect network communications and determine how that need can best be met.
  2. **Design the Solution**—Make design decisions in four areas: architectural considerations, authentication methods, cryptographic policy, and packet filters.
  3. **Implement and Test a Prototype**—Test a prototype of the designed solution in a lab or test environment to identify any potential issues.
  4. **Deploy the Solution**—Gradually deploy IPsec throughout the enterprise.
  5. **Manage the Solution**—Maintain the IPsec components and resolve operational issues; repeat the planning and implementation process when significant changes need to be incorporated into the solution.
- The placement of an IPsec gateway has potential security, functionality, and performance implications. Specific factors to consider include device performance, traffic examination, gateway outages, and NAT.
- Although IPsec clients built into operating systems may be more convenient than deploying third-party client software, third-party clients may offer features that built-in clients do not.
- When IPsec hosts are located outside the organization's networks, it may be desirable to assign them virtual internal IP addresses to provide compatibility with existing IP address-based security controls.
- Authentication options include PSKs, digital signatures, and (in some implementations) external authentication services such as EAP and Generic Security Services Application

- 3257 Program Interface (GSSAPI)/Kerberos. An authentication solution should be selected  
3258 based primarily on ease of maintenance, scalability, and security.
- 3259 • Cryptographic algorithms and key lengths that are considered secure for current practice  
3260 should be used for encryption and integrity protection. AES-GCM with a 128-bit key or  
3261 256-bit key is recommended for encryption and integrity. DH ECP groups and the MODP  
3262 group 14 (2048) are recommended. More than one algorithm can be specified to ease the  
3263 transition to new updated algorithms.
  - 3264 • Packet filters should apply appropriate protections to traffic and not protect other types of  
3265 traffic for performance or functionality reasons.
  - 3266 • Specific design decisions include IKE and IPsec SA lifetimes, DH group numbers, extra  
3267 packet padding, and the use of PFS. When IPsec is going to be used with third parties,  
3268 design decisions should take the capabilities of those third parties into account, as long as  
3269 their capabilities are using NIST-approved algorithms and methods. Additional design  
3270 considerations include current and future network characteristics, incident response, log  
3271 management, redundancy, and other security controls already in place.
  - 3272 • Testing of the prototype implementation should evaluate several factors, including  
3273 connectivity, protection, IKE authentication, application compatibility, management,  
3274 logging, performance, the security of the implementation, component interoperability,  
3275 and default settings.
  - 3276 • Existing network infrastructure, applications, and users should gradually be migrated to  
3277 the new IPsec solution. This provides administrators an opportunity to evaluate the  
3278 impact of the IPsec solution and resolve issues prior to enterprise wide deployment.
  - 3279 • After implementation, the IPsec solution needs to be maintained, such as applying  
3280 patches and deploying IPsec to additional networks and hosts. Operational issues also  
3281 need to be addressed and resolved.
  - 3282 • Organizations should implement technical, operational, and management controls that  
3283 support and complement IPsec implementations. Examples include having control over  
3284 all entry and exit points for the protected networks, ensuring the security of all IPsec  
3285 endpoints, and incorporating IPsec considerations into organizational policies.
- 3286

## 8 Alternatives to IPsec

This section lists several VPN protocols that are used as alternatives to IPsec and groups them by the layer of the IP model (as shown in Figure 16)<sup>65</sup> at which they function, although the distinction between layers is not always clear. For each VPN protocol, a brief description is provided, along with a description of the circumstances under which it may be more advantageous than IPsec. Some alternatives have specifications and implementations, but some of the alternatives are implementations with some documentation that does not provide a full specification.

<b>Application Layer.</b> This layer sends and receives data for particular applications, such as Domain Name System (DNS), web traffic via Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) and HTTP Secure (HTTPS), and email via Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) and the Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP).
<b>Transport Layer.</b> This layer provides connection-oriented or connectionless services for transporting application layer services between networks. The transport layer can optionally assure the reliability of communications. Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) are commonly used transport layer protocols.
<b>Network Layer.</b> This layer routes packets across networks. Internet Protocol (IP) is the fundamental network layer protocol for TCP/IP. Other commonly used protocols at the network layer are Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) and Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP).
<b>Data Link Layer.</b> This layer handles communications on the physical network components. The best-known data link layer protocols are Ethernet and the various WiFi standards such as the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) 802.11.

Figure 16: IP Model

If only one or two applications need protection, a network layer control may be excessive. Transport layer protocols such as TLS are most commonly used to provide security for communications with individual HTTP-based applications, although they are also used to provide protection for communication sessions of other types of applications such as SMTP, Post Office Protocol (POP), IMAP, and FTP. Because all major web browsers include support for TLS, users who wish to use web-based applications that are protected by TLS normally do not need to install any client software or reconfigure their systems. Web-based systems have gained considerable integration support that reaches outside the browser. One common example is the virtual network drive, where the browser takes on the role of a file manager application to securely transmit files.

### 8.1 Data Link Layer VPN Protocols

Data link layer VPN protocols function below the network layer in the TCP/IP model. These types of VPNs are also known as layer 2 VPNs (L2VPN). This means non-IP network protocols can also be used with a data link layer VPN. Most VPN protocols (including IPsec) only support IP, so data link layer VPN protocols may provide a viable option for protecting networks running

<sup>65</sup> Figure 16 repeats Figure 1 for additional clarity.

non-IP protocols. (As the name implies, IPsec is designed to provide security for IP traffic only.). Protection at the link layer means that the security added is limited to the devices that share this link layer, such as an Ethernet-based LAN or WiFi network. However, various virtual link layers now exist to facilitate network virtualization, allowing a link layer VPN protocol to secure nodes in different physical (and virtual) locations. Since confidentiality and integrity happen at the link layer, deploying a link layer VPN protocol requires no specific support in the application. However, this also means that the application is generally not aware of the link layer protection and cannot make decisions based on whether the communication is secure or not.

### 8.1.1 WiFi Data Link Protection

All devices that support WiFi technology support a number of link layer protocols that provide confidentiality and integrity protection. Wireless connections broadcast their data, so from the start there has been a push to send data using confidentiality and integrity protection. The initial security protocol was Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP), deprecated in 2004 for Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA). WEP uses 40-bit or 128-bit RC4 PSKs and is easily broken, whereas WPA2<sup>66</sup> uses AES-CCM. The Enterprise versions of WPA use IEEE 802.1X for authentication instead of a PSK. WPA supports a number of EAP extensions, such as EAP-TLS, EAP-MSCHAPv2, and EAP-Subscriber Identity Module (EAP-SIM). In WPA3, the PSK is replaced by Password Authenticated Key Exchange (PAKE) which offers more protection against the use of weak passwords. WPA3 also offers PFS.<sup>67</sup>

The strength of the link layer protection for WiFi depends strongly on the configuration and the implementation of the various 802.11 standards. WiFi encryption only protects the data from the wireless device to the wireless access point. It is good practice to consider WiFi encryption to be insufficient and to not trust the access point. Devices on a WiFi network should use a remote access VPN like IPsec to communicate with resources on the wired network. This is especially true for WiFi access points belonging to third parties, such as restaurants and hotels.

### 8.1.2 Media Access Control Security (MACsec)

MACsec is an industry standard defined in IEEE 802.1AE. It creates point-to-point security associations within an Ethernet network. MACsec is the Ethernet version of WiFi WPA security. It uses AES-GCM with 128-bit keys for confidentiality and integrity. It protects regular IP traffic, as well as ARP, IPv6 Neighbor Discovery (ND), and DHCP. For key exchange and mutual authentication, MACsec uses the IEEE 802.1X extension MACsec Key Agreement (MKA) protocol. New devices have to authenticate themselves to the authentication server before being able to join the network, and communication with other hosts on the network are encrypted between each pair of hosts. This allows MACsec to be used with virtual network

---

<sup>66</sup> WPA version 1 was designed as a compromise between security and being able to run on old hardware that implemented WEP. It uses the Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) which was a stopgap replacement for the broken WEP protocol, but TKIP is also no longer considered secure. WPA2 mandated the support for the Counter Mode with Cipher Block Chaining Message Authentication Code Protocol (CCMP), which uses AES-CCM.

<sup>67</sup> See also NIST SP 800-153, *Guidelines for Securing Wireless Local Area Networks (WLANs)* [67].

3345 technologies such as Virtual eXtensible LAN (VXLAN) and GEneric NEtwork Virtualization  
3346 Encapsulation (GENEVE).

3347 MACsec can protect two machines via a switch even if the switch itself does not support  
3348 MACsec. However, if the switch supports MACsec, each individual Ethernet port of the switch  
3349 can become a node in the MACsec network for devices connected to those ports that do not  
3350 support MACsec natively. In that case, all traffic between this device and the LAN is encrypted,  
3351 except from the Ethernet port to the actual device.

3352 The Ethernet packet change to support MACsec is similar to the change of an IP packet to  
3353 support IPsec. The Ethernet header is extended with the SecTAG header, which contains the  
3354 equivalent to the ESP SPI number and Sequence Number. This is followed by the (now  
3355 encrypted) original payload, followed by the ICV.<sup>68</sup> To a switch that does not support MACsec,  
3356 the SecTAG and ICV look like just part of the regular Ethernet frame payload.

3357 Similar to IPsec, MACsec can be configured to use manual keying. It suffers from all the same  
3358 problems as IPsec manual keying: no PFS, and no protection from reusing the same counters as  
3359 nonces for AES-GCM.

## 3360 **8.2 Transport Layer VPN Protocols (SSL VPNs)**

3361 Transport layer VPNs are what people usually think of when describing a VPN. The host obtains  
3362 a new virtual interface configured with one or more IP addresses. Packets to and from this virtual  
3363 interface use a transport protocol to encapsulate the packets securely to the remote endpoint of  
3364 the VPN. The packets are then further routed, just like packets that arrived on a physical network  
3365 interface. The most common IPsec alternative is the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) VPN. Although  
3366 these are still called SSL VPNs, most actually use the TLS protocol and not the older SSL  
3367 protocol. This can be TLS [16] based on TCP or DTLS [68] based on UDP. The advantage is  
3368 that SSL VPNs' traffic is much harder to be blocked, as it can run on any (preconfigured) port  
3369 number. Usually, it is run over port 443 (HTTPS) since most networks pass on this traffic  
3370 without attempting any kind of deep packet inspection. When using TCP, it can suffer from  
3371 severe performance degrading due to dueling TCP layers when there is congestion or packet loss;  
3372 DTLS does not have this problem. SSL VPNs are usually implemented as an application,  
3373 resulting in significantly lower performance compared to kernel-based VPNs such as IPsec or  
3374 WireGuard.

3375 NIST provides specific guidance for SSL VPN deployments in NIST SP 800-113, *Guide to SSL*  
3376 *VPNs* [69].

### 3377 **8.2.1 Secure Socket Tunneling Protocol (SSTP)**

3378 Secure Socket Tunneling Protocol (SSTP) is the Microsoft version of an SSL VPN. It uses  
3379 SSL/TLS over port 443 and can use TCP or UDP as the underlying protocol. It uses the SSTP

---

<sup>68</sup> In ESP, the ICV is only used for non-AEAD protocols. For AEAD protocols such as AES-GCM, the ICV is implicit and generated from the IKE session and not transmitted over the wire.

3380 protocol to run a Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) session that handles the IP assignment and IP  
3381 encapsulation. Microsoft calls this a Point-to-Site VPN, which is another name for remote access  
3382 VPN. It supports the standard encryption and integrity algorithms that SSL/TLS support.

### 3383 **8.2.2 OpenConnect**

3384 OpenConnect originated as an open source replacement implementation for the Cisco  
3385 AnyConnect SSL VPN client using the Cisco proprietary AnyConnect protocol. OpenConnect is  
3386 now a protocol specification and a client and server implementation. While it remains backwards  
3387 compatible with Cisco AnyConnect, it has added its own features and has been submitted to the  
3388 IETF as a draft to become an Informational RFC [70]. It uses DTLS but can fall back to TLS  
3389 over TCP when needed. The server is authenticated via a machine certificate. Clients can  
3390 authenticate using a user/password, certificate, or Kerberos (GSSAPI). The OpenConnect client  
3391 also supports other proprietary SSL VPN protocols that are similar to Cisco AnyConnect, such as  
3392 Palo Alto GlobalProtect and Juniper SSL-VPN. OpenConnect is a relatively new SSL VPN and  
3393 has not been deployed as much as other SSL VPNs.

### 3394 **8.2.3 OpenVPN**

3395 OpenVPN is a popular SSL VPN protocol/implementation that was originally written in 2001. It  
3396 uses SSL or TLS over any preconfigured port and can use TCP or UDP as the transport protocol.  
3397 The supported algorithms are the common SSL/TLS algorithms. For authentication, it supports  
3398 certificates, PSKs, and user/password. It can act as a link layer VPN or as a transport layer VPN.  
3399 The server can send the client commands to be executed, which can be dangerous. OpenVPN has  
3400 a larger attack surface because the entire protocol runs as a user process and has had  
3401 vulnerabilities in the past. It is one of the more widely used SSL VPNs.

## 3402 **8.3 WireGuard**

3403 WireGuard<sup>69</sup> is a fairly new VPN implementation originally written for the Linux kernel. It is a  
3404 minimalistic VPN implementation that is less complex than IPsec, but as a result is also not as  
3405 flexible as IPsec. There is no formal protocol specification or publication in static form, which  
3406 makes it harder to find compatibility issues between different versions, although it does provide  
3407 extensive documentation of the current implementation. The code base is small compared to  
3408 other VPN implementations. It combines the control and data plane over a single preconfigured  
3409 UDP port.

3410 WireGuard uses the Noise Protocol Framework<sup>70</sup> for its key exchange and the HMAC-Based  
3411 Key Derivation Function (HKDF) [71] to generate symmetric encryption keys. It uses  
3412 Curve25519 [72] as its DH group and supports authentication only via public keys. It uses  
3413 CHACHA20POLY1305 [73] as its encryption and integrity algorithm. None of these algorithms

---

<sup>69</sup> <https://www.wireguard.com>

<sup>70</sup> <https://www.noiseprotocol.org/>



3414 are NIST-approved at the moment. However, NIST plans to allow Edwards Curve DSA  
3415 (EdDSA) digital signatures [74].

3416 There are many similarities with IPsec and IKE. WireGuard uses IKEv2-style DDoS COOKIES  
3417 and DPD/Keepalives. The data packet looks very similar to ESP in tunnel mode. Transport mode  
3418 is not supported. Its replay attack protection is the same as IPsec, using a replay window of 2000  
3419 (continuous packet ids). It supports PPK and has the same seamless reconnection properties as  
3420 MOBIKE where a device can switch network interfaces without losing the VPN connection.  
3421 WireGuard takes advantage of multiple CPUs when present, unlike typical SSL VPNs that are  
3422 bound to one CPU.

3423 The protocol does not allow for DHCP-style IP address allocation, and IP addresses are hard-  
3424 coded in its configuration file on the client and server. DNS configuration has to be conveyed via  
3425 a provisioning protocol. WireGuard lacks authentication support using certificates or PSKs. It  
3426 does not support a transport mode configuration, making it less suitable for mesh encryption. It  
3427 does not support AES-GCM.

3428 WireGuard is mostly intended as a remote access VPN. As such, it does a much better job  
3429 compared to SSL VPNs and SSH. While it can be used in a gateway-to-gateway or host-to-host  
3430 architecture, it misses the optimizations and flexibility of IPsec in these architectures.

#### 3431 **8.4 Secure Shell (SSH)**

3432 SSH is a commonly used application layer protocol suite. While it is commonly used as a secure  
3433 remote login application and a secure file transfer application, it can also be used to tunnel  
3434 specific ports via an SSH connection to allow either a local connection to access a remote  
3435 resource, or a remote connection to access a local resource. SSH is often used on intermediary  
3436 hosts (also called bastion hosts) to jump to other hosts, but that jump does not need to be to the  
3437 remote login (SSH) host itself. For instance, port 25 on localhost (127.0.0.1) could be made  
3438 available to locally running mail clients, with SSH tunneling this traffic over the SSH VPN to the  
3439 bastion host, where the SSH client running will forward the traffic to a remote mail server's port  
3440 25. Because a single SSH tunnel can provide protection for several applications at once, it is  
3441 technically a transport layer VPN protocol, not an application layer protocol.

3442 While SSH could be used to start a PPP daemon to create a more traditional VPN with an  
3443 interface, recent versions of OpenSSH have added native functionality for binding the SSH  
3444 protocol to tun interfaces on the hosts. An SSH tunnel creates a tun interface on the local and  
3445 remote host, and these tun interfaces can be configured with other IP addresses, providing a true  
3446 remote access VPN.

3447 As with SSL VPNs, SSH VPNs perform badly if there is packet loss, due to multiple TCP layers  
3448 independently retransmitting packets.

3449 SSH tunnel-based VPNs are resource-intensive and complex to set up. They require the  
3450 installation and configuration of SSH client software on each user's machine, as well as the  
3451 reconfiguration of client applications to use the tunnel. Each user must also have login privileges

on a server within the organization; because this server typically needs to be directly accessible from the Internet, it is susceptible to attack. Generally, users need to have solid technical skills so that they can configure systems and applications themselves, as well as troubleshoot problems that occur. The most common users of SSH tunnel-based VPNs are small groups of IT administrators.

## **8.5 Obsolete and Deprecated VPN Protocols**

A number of commonly used VPN protocols are no longer suitable for use. Some of these were designed for dial-up internet connections. Some used encryption techniques that were broken or have become too weak to withstand current computational attacks. Early VPN protocols were implemented on top of PPP [75]. These solutions were built as extensions to secure modem-based connections and are no longer appropriate to deploy, both from an architectural point of view and from a cryptographic point of view. The protocols listed in this section must not be used.

### **8.5.1 Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP)**

The Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) [76] uses Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE, IP protocol 47) as its transport protocol. The GRE tunnel is used to send PPP packets. Similar to the ESP protocol, NAT routers often do not forward this protocol. PPTP uses TCP port 1723 as its control plane. It uses the Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption (MPPE) mechanism at the PPP layer for encryption. MPPE uses the deprecated RSA RC4 algorithm with 40-bit or 128-bit keys [77]. For authentication it can use the Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) [78] or Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) [79]. Microsoft created MS-CHAPv1 and MS-CHAPv2 to provide stronger forms of authentication, but researchers have found serious weaknesses in MS-CHAP.<sup>71</sup> The original version of PPTP contained serious security flaws. PPTP version 2 addressed many of these issues, but researchers have identified weaknesses with this version as well (in addition to the MS-CHAP issues).<sup>72</sup> PPTP should not be used, and if it is used regardless, it should be considered as a plaintext protocol with no functional confidentiality or integrity protection.

### **8.5.2 Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP)**

The Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) [80] is the successor to PPTP. Instead of using the GRE protocol, it encapsulates PPP packets inside UDP on port 1701. For confidentiality and integrity of the data plane, it depends on IPsec. Some implementations support encryption at the PPP layer, meaning that to enable IPsec support, one has to (confusingly) disable “L2TP encryption”. L2TP without IPsec is used by some ISPs as the replacement of PPTP connections, but this usage is not a VPN. L2TP VPNs all use IPsec in transport mode, commonly referred to as L2TP/IPsec. In addition to the PPP-provided authentication methods, L2TP can also use other

---

<sup>71</sup> One paper discussing MS-CHAP weaknesses is “Exploiting Known Security Holes in Microsoft’s PPTP Authentication Extensions (MS-CHAPv2)” by Jochen Eisinger ([http://www2.informatik.uni-freiburg.de/~eisinger/paper/pptp\\_mschapv2.pdf](http://www2.informatik.uni-freiburg.de/~eisinger/paper/pptp_mschapv2.pdf)).

<sup>72</sup> For more information on PPTP security issues, see Bruce Schneier’s “Analysis of Microsoft PPTP Version 2” page, located at <https://www.schneier.com/academic/pptp/>.

methods, such as RADIUS [81], although it commonly uses the PPP-based MS-CHAPv2 for authentication of the PPP layer. IPsec is established using IKEv1, often using a weak group PSK, but it can be deployed using X.509 certificates as well. Even when deployed securely, L2TP/IPsec offers no advantage over IKEv2-based IPsec VPNs. It adds a number of unnecessary encapsulation layers that reduce the effective MTU and increase network issues related to packet fragmentation. Additionally, because it uses IPsec in transport mode, it works poorly behind NAT. Some vendors switch to tunnel mode when behind NAT, but not all L2TP/IPsec servers are configured to support tunnel mode.

One advantage of L2TP/IPsec used to be that it was shipped as part of popular operating systems, which meant no separate VPN software needed to be purchased and installed. Up-to-date versions of those operating systems now support IKEv2-based IPsec VPNs. Additionally, L2TP/IPsec VPNs usually do not support AEAD algorithms such as AES-GCM, which increases the CPU usage compared to IKEv2-based IPsec VPNs. On mobile devices this means using more battery power. L2TP/IPsec deployments should be migrated to IKEv2-based IPsec VPNs.

## **8.6 Summary**

Section 8 describes the main alternatives to IPsec. SSL VPNs are popular because they are not as easily blocked as IPsec VPNs, although this advantage will be negated once IKEv2-based IPsec implementations add support for TCP and TLS encapsulation as specified in [49]. Traditionally, SSL VPNs were easier to set up and use than IPsec VPNs, but IKEv2 configurations and provisioning systems have improved considerably making IPsec VPNs as easy to set up and use as SSL VPNs. WireGuard is an interesting upcoming remote access VPN protocol, but at the moment has no support for NIST-approved algorithms.

## 9 Planning and Implementation Case Studies

This section presents a few typical IPsec solution planning and implementation case studies. Each case study begins by describing a real-world security requirement scenario, such as protecting network communications between two offices. The case study then discusses possible solutions for the security requirement and explains why IPsec was selected over the alternatives. The next section of each case study discusses the design of the solution and includes a simple network diagram that shows the primary components of the solution (e.g., IPsec gateways and hosts, routers, switches). Each case study also provides some details of the implementation of the solution prototype, which include examples of configuring the solution using commonly available equipment and software, based on an implementation performed in a lab or production environment. Each case study ends with a brief discussion that points out noteworthy aspects of the implementation, indicates when another case study model may be more effective, and discusses variants on the case study scenario that might be of interest to readers.

The case studies are not meant to endorse the use of particular products, nor are any products being recommended over other products. Several common products were chosen so the case studies would demonstrate a variety of solutions. **Organizations and individuals should not replicate and deploy the sample configuration files or entries.** They are intended to illustrate the decisions and actions involved in configuring the solutions, not to be deployed as-is onto systems.

The case studies presented in this section are as follows:

- Protecting communications between two local area networks (remote office, main office)
- Protecting wireless communications in a small office/home office environment
- Protecting communications between remote users (e.g., telecommuters, road warriors) and the main office's network
- Protecting a datacenter or cloud network using mesh encryption

### 9.1 Connecting a Remote Office to the Main Office

An organization with a single office location is planning the creation of a small remote office, which includes identifying any needs to protect network communications. To perform various job functions, most users at the remote office will need to access several information technology (IT) resources located at the main office, including the organization's email, intranet web server, databases, and file servers, as well as several business applications. Currently, email is the only one of these resources that can be accessed from outside the main office (it is available through the Internet using a web-based email client). Communications with most of the IT resources will involve transferring sensitive data (such as financial information) between systems. To support its mission, the organization needs to maintain the confidentiality and integrity of the data in a cost-effective manner. (At this time, the need is to protect communications initiated by remote office hosts to the main office network only; in the future, the solution might be extended to protect communications initiated by main office hosts to the remote office network.) The

following sections describe how the organization evaluates its options, identifies a viable solution, creates a design, and implements a prototype.

### 9.1.1 Identifying Needs and Evaluating Options

As described below, the organization considers a few options for providing access from the remote office to IT resources at the main office and protecting the data:

- **Data Link Layer Solution: Leased Line.** The organization could establish a dedicated leased line between the remote office and the main office. This would provide a private communications mechanism for all the network traffic between the offices. (If the organization were concerned about security breaches of the leased line, additional protection measures such as a data link layer VPN protocol could be used to provide another layer of security.) Unfortunately, because the remote office is geographically distant from the main office, a leased line would be prohibitively expensive.
- **Network Layer Solution: Network Layer VPN.** The organization could establish a network layer VPN between the remote office and main office. Connecting the remote office to the Internet and establishing a VPN tunnel over the Internet between the offices could provide access to the resources and protect the communications. The VPN could have a remote access architecture, which would reduce hardware costs (only one gateway needed) but increase labor costs (deploying and configuring clients on each remote office system). A gateway-to-gateway architecture would increase hardware costs and decrease labor costs; in effect, the VPN would be invisible to users. The two models also differ in terms of authentication. In a gateway-to-gateway VPN, the gateways would authenticate with each other; in a remote access VPN, each user would need to authenticate before using the VPN. A gateway-to-gateway VPN could also be configured to permit authorized users from the main office to access resources on the remote office's network. Although this is not a current need, it could be in the future.
- **Transport Layer Solution: Web-Based Applications.** The organization could provide web-based access to all required IT resources. This could be done either by creating or acquiring web-based clients for each resource, or by deploying a terminal server that provides access to the resource and providing a web-based terminal server client to employees. All web-based applications would use the TLS protocol over HTTP (transport layer security controls) to protect the confidentiality and integrity of data and authentication credentials. By connecting the remote office to the Internet and making the web-based applications available from the Internet, users at the remote office could use the required IT resources, and the communications would be protected. The main office's network perimeter could be configured to permit external access to the resources only from the remote office's IP address range, which would reduce the risk of external parties gaining unauthorized access to the resources. Users would need to be authenticated by the terminal server, the individual applications, or both the server and the applications.
- **Application Layer Solution: Application Modification.** The organization could purchase add-on software and modify existing applications to provide protection for data within each application. However, a brief review of the required IT resources shows that

several of them are off-the-shelf applications that cannot be modified and cannot be protected by third-party application add-ons. Even if the applications could be deployed to protect their own communications, the applications would have to be directly accessible by remote users, which would significantly increase their exposure to threats. The organization is also concerned about the effectiveness of application layer controls in protecting data. Application layer controls may also conceal information from network layer security controls such as network-based intrusion detection systems, necessitating the use of additional host-based security controls that can monitor application layer activity. Having separate controls for each application also complicates or precludes centralized enforcement of security policies across multiple applications, as well as centralized authentication (unless each application supports the use of a third-party authentication server.)

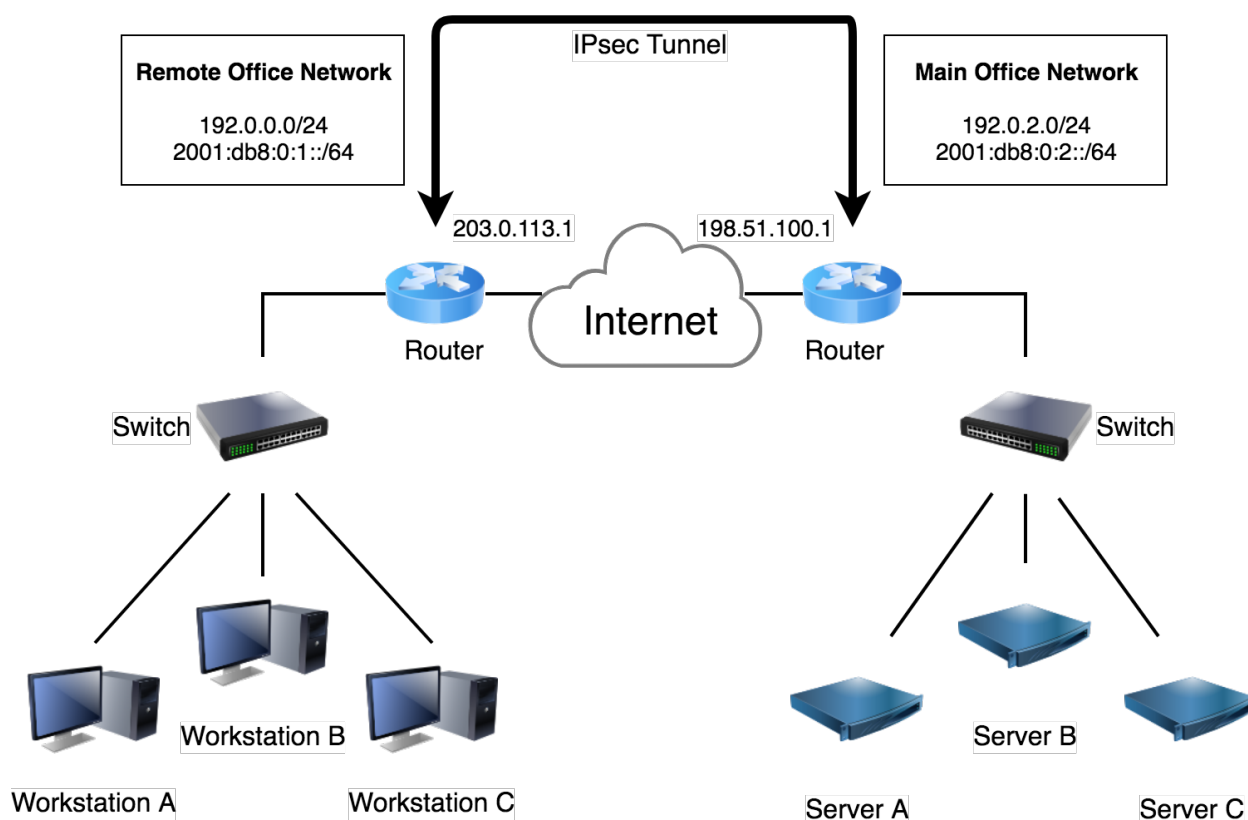
The organization considers the network layer and transport layer options to be the most feasible for meeting its remote access needs. The data link layer and application layer solutions are too expensive, compared to the network and transport layer solutions. Further investigation of the transport layer solution determines that it is not possible or practical to provide web-based interfaces for several of the desired IT resources. For example, some of the desired applications are off-the-shelf products that offer no web-based client. A terminal server solution could provide access, but this would require users to connect to the terminal server and authenticate before accessing any applications. Also, each host would need the terminal server client to be installed and configured.

After comparing the three remaining solutions (remote access network layer VPN, gateway-to-gateway network layer VPN, and terminal server transport layer VPN) and considering how each solution would be deployed in the organization's environment, the organization chooses the gateway-to-gateway network layer VPN. Its primary advantages are that it should be relatively easy for the organization to deploy and maintain, and it will be transparent to users. The organization expects to be able to configure the Internet routers at the main office and remote office to act as VPN gateways, so no additional hardware will be needed. Also, each office already routes internally generated network traffic designated for another office's network to its Internet router, so routing changes should need to be made only on the Internet routers themselves. Another advantage of the gateway-to-gateway VPN is that in the future, users at the main office could use it to access resources at the remote office. There is no current need for this, but it is likely that as the remote office matures, this may become a necessity.

### **9.1.2 Designing the Solution**

The organization hopes to use its Internet routers as endpoints for the VPN solution, see Figure 17 below. Both routers support IPsec, and IPsec should be able to protect confidentiality and integrity adequately for the organization's needs, so the plan is to configure the routers to provide an IPsec tunnel. Based on the organization's performance requirements, the routers

should be able to handle any additional load because they are currently lightly utilized.<sup>73</sup> Figure 17 illustrates the planned design for the VPN architecture. The main office and remote office networks are on separate private networks, each with an IPv4 network. Each private network is connected to the Internet through a router that provides NAT services. The plan is to establish an IPsec tunnel between the external interfaces of the two routers. Desktop computers on the remote office network will send unencrypted information to the office's Internet router. The router acts as a VPN gateway, encrypting the traffic and forwarding it to the destination router at the main office, which also acts as a VPN gateway. The main office router decrypts the traffic and forwards it to its final destination, such as a file server or email server. Responses from the servers to the desktops are returned through the tunnel between the gateways.



**Figure 17: Gateway-to-Gateway VPN for Remote Office Connectivity**

In this scenario, NAT is an important architectural consideration. If possible, the design should keep NAT services out of the IPsec tunnel path to avoid potential NAT-related incompatibilities and to simplify the design. This means that outgoing packets to the remote network needing to pass through the IPsec tunnel should be excluded from NAT.

<sup>73</sup> If the load on the routers increases significantly in the future, cryptographic accelerator cards possibly could be added to the routers. (Not all routers support the use of such cards.)

After designing the architecture, the network administrators next consider other elements of the design, including the following:

- **Authentication.** Because the VPN is being established between only two routers, a strong PSK with entropy of at least 112 bits should provide adequate authentication with minimal effort (as compared to alternatives such as digital certificates). The routers will encrypt the PSK in storage to protect it.
- **IKE and ESP Algorithms.** Since 128-bit AES provides sufficiently strong encryption, it is chosen initially for ESP to prevent potentially overloading the gateways. The AES-GCM algorithm is a good choice for IKE and ESP, because it is an AEAD algorithm providing encryption and integrity together in an efficient and more secure manner. It is preferred over the older combined algorithms with separate encryption and integrity algorithms, such as AES-CBC with HMAC-SHA-2. The PRF used is SHA-256-HMAC. If the DH group chosen is DH 19, a modern and strong ECP group that provides 128 bits of security strength. PFS is enabled to ensure that a compromise of one of the routers will not cause all previously captured encrypted traffic to be vulnerable to decryption. A fallback proposal using AES-CBC with HMAC-SHA-2 is added to ensure maximum interoperability with other devices, as not all devices support AES-GCM for IKE and ESP. The initiator must use a DH group that is also supported by the responder.
- **Packet Filters.** The network administrators work with the security staff to design packet filters that will permit only the necessary network traffic between the two networks and will require adequate protection for traffic. To make initial testing of the solution easier, the administrators decide that the packet filters should allow all IP-based communications from the remote office's hosts to the main office's hosts. Once initial testing has been completed, more restrictive packet filters will be added and tested. The packet filters should permit only the necessary communications and specify the appropriate protection for each type of communication.
- **MTU and Fragmentation.** Since the IPsec tunnel is using an ISP, and the network might not support packets larger than 1500 bytes, both routers are set to use TCP MSS clamping at 1440 bytes, as path MTU discovery might not work properly across the network.

### 9.1.3 Implementing a Prototype

Because the organization has limited network equipment and does not have a test lab, the IT staff decides the best option for validating the solution is to test it after hours using the production routers once the remote office network infrastructure is in place and Internet connectivity has been established. If the testing causes a connectivity outage, the impact should be minimal. The network administrators perform the following steps to configure and test a prototype of the IPsec solution:

1. **Back up the routers.** Backing up the router operating system and configuration files is a necessity since the prototype is being implemented on production equipment. Even in a test environment, performing a backup before making any changes is often very helpful because the routers can be restored quickly to a "clean" state.



2. **Update the firmware of the routers.** To ensure that no known bugs are left unfixed, the routers are updated to the latest firmware and assessed for regular operation without any other changes in configuration. One endpoint is updated and rebooted. Once the network is confirmed to be operating properly, the other endpoint's firmware is updated, and the router is rebooted. Once both routers are confirmed to be working properly on the latest firmware, the process of configuring the routers for IPsec can be started.
3. **Verify the security of the routers.** The network administrators should perform a vulnerability assessment to identify any existing security issues with the routers, such as unneeded user accounts or inadequate physical security controls. The administrators should then address all identified issues before proceeding, or the IPsec implementation may be compromised quickly.
4. **Update the endpoints to support IPsec.** This could involve patching the operating system, installing or enabling IPsec services, or making other changes to the endpoints so that they can support IPsec services. In this case, both endpoints happen to be Cisco routers, so the administrators double-check each router to confirm that it can support IPsec and the desired encryption algorithm.
5. **Specify the IKE cryptographic algorithms.** For our preferred proposal, use AES-GCM, since it is an AEAD algorithm; specify a PRF. For the fallback proposal, use AES-CBC with HMAC-SHA-256. It will use SHA-256 (in HMAC) for integrity protection as well. The following ECP DH group (19) is specified.
 

```
crypto ikev2 proposal 1
  encryption aes-gcm 256
  prf sha256
  group 19

crypto ikev2 proposal 2
  encryption aes-cbc-256
  integrity sha25674
  group 1975

crypto ikev2 policy default
  proposal 1
  proposal 2
  match fvfr any
```
6. **Specify the IKE authentication method.** In this case, each router needs to be configured to use a PSK, as illustrated by the following configuration entries<sup>76</sup>. Instead of IP

<sup>74</sup> For AEAD algorithms, a PRF needs to be specified. For non-AEAD algorithms, the PRF defaults to the integrity algorithm.

<sup>75</sup> Change this value to 14 and/or 15 if DH 19 is not supported by the other device.

<sup>76</sup> Secure transport for the PSK is provided by one of the network administrators, who physically carries a copy of the key from the main office to the remote office.

3716 addresses as identifiers, Fully Qualified Domain Names (FQDNs) will be used. An easy  
 3717 way to create a strong random PSK is to use the openssl command: `openssl rand -`  
 3718 `base64 64`

3719 `crypto ikev2 profile default`  
 3720 `identity local fqdn west.example.gov`  
 3721 `match identity remote fqdn east.example.gov`  
 3722 `authentication local pre-share key XXXXXXXXXX`  
 3723 `authentication remote pre-share key XXXXXXXXXX`

3724 **7. Specify the IPsec mode and cryptographic algorithms.** The following configuration  
 3725 entry on each router specifies ESP tunnel mode, preferring AES-GCM instead of AES-  
 3726 CBC-128 encryption with HMAC-SHA-256 integrity protection:

3727 `crypto ipsec transform-set 1 esp-gcm-12877`  
 3728 `mode tunnel`  
 3729 `crypto ipsec transform-set 2 esp-cbc-128`  
 3730 `mode tunnel`

3731 **8. Define the packet filters.** The following configuration entry tells the routers which  
 3732 packets should be permitted to use IPsec:

3733 `ip access-list extended 100`  
 3734 `permit ip 192.0.0.0 0.0.0.255 192.0.2.0 0.0.0.255`  
 3735 `permit ipv6 2001:db8:0:1::/64 2001:db8:0:2::/64`

3736 **9. Tie the IPsec settings together in a crypto map.** On Cisco routers, the settings created  
 3737 in steps 5, 6, and 7 need to be connected. This can be done through the following  
 3738 configuration settings, which create a crypto map called *west-east*:

3739 `crypto map west-east 1 ipsec-isakmp`  
 3740 `set peer 203.0.113.1`  
 3741 `set transform-set 1 2`  
 3742 `set pfs group1978`  
 3743 `set ikev2-profile default`  
 3744 `match address 100`

3745 **10. Apply the IPsec settings to the external interface.** Because the external interface of the  
 3746 router will provide IPsec services, the crypto map created in the previous step must be  
 3747 applied to the external interface. This is done through the following commands:

3748 `interface g1/1`

---

<sup>77</sup> The term *transform set* refers to the VPN algorithms and security protocols.

<sup>78</sup> For devices not supporting DH 19, use DH 14 and/or DH 15.

3749           `crypto map west-east`

3750           **11. Review the configuration.** After configuring both routers, the administrators review the  
 3751           routers' configurations to ensure that all the necessary settings are in place.<sup>79</sup> The  
 3752           following commands can be used to display the policies:

3753           `show crypto ikev2 policy`  
 3754           `show crypto map`

3755           **12. Test the solution.** Administrators can test the solution by attempting to gain access to  
 3756           main office resources from a desktop at the remote office. The test should also include  
 3757           using packet sniffers to monitor the network traffic at both offices and confirm it is  
 3758           properly protected. If successful, the configuration could be updated to use 256-bit keys  
 3759           for ESP encryption. If the test is unsuccessful, the administrators should troubleshoot the  
 3760           problem, make any necessary corrections or changes, then test the solution again.<sup>80</sup>  
 3761           Additional test actions should include implementing the restrictive packet filters and  
 3762           verifying them, and verifying that the correct algorithms are used. For example, some  
 3763           IPsec implementations have a fallback policy that causes weaker algorithms to be used if  
 3764           the user-selected settings cannot be negotiated successfully; this could provide inadequate  
 3765           protection for communications.

#### 3766   **9.1.4 Analysis**

3767   Setting up an IPsec tunnel between Internet routers can be effective in connecting remote offices  
 3768   with multiple users to another network. It can reduce costs because remote offices need only  
 3769   Internet connectivity instead of a leased line. In addition, all traffic from the remote office could  
 3770   be routed through the main corporate firewall, which could decrease the costs and risks associated  
 3771   with the administration of multiple firewalls. To set up this type of implementation, both routers  
 3772   need to have a static IP address because the addresses would have to be entered into the IPsec  
 3773   configurations. In most cases, this is not an issue for the router at the main office, but it may be a  
 3774   problem for locations such as home offices that often use DSL or cable modem services, which  
 3775   may offer only dynamic IP addresses. Remote access solutions may be more practical for such  
 3776   situations.

3777   In this case study, a gateway-to-gateway VPN was established between a remote office and the  
 3778   main office. An interesting variant on this scenario is a gateway-to-gateway VPN between the  
 3779   main office and the network of a business partner. In such a case, more stringent security  
 3780   measures may be needed to satisfy each organization's requirements for communication. Also,  
 3781   the organizations should establish a formal interconnection agreement that specifies the technical  
 3782   and security requirements for establishing, operating, and maintaining the interconnection, as

---

<sup>79</sup> Appendix C.1 contains a sample configuration file from one of the routers.

<sup>80</sup> The **debug crypto ikev2**, **debug crypto ipsec**, and **debug crypto engine** commands cause the router to display any errors related to the crypto implementation in the terminal window. This can be useful in determining why a connection is failing. Also, the **clear crypto sa** command can be used to clear part or all of the SA database, which may clear some errors.

3783 well as documenting the terms and conditions for sharing data and information resources in a  
3784 secure manner. Appendix B contains more information on interconnection agreements.

3785 In a gateway-to-gateway VPN between the organization and a business partner, each  
3786 organization typically has control over its own VPN gateway. Accordingly, the organizations  
3787 need to identify an acceptable out-of-band method for provisioning each other's gateways with  
3788 the necessary authentication information, such as PSKs or digital certificates. Another possible  
3789 difference from the original scenario is that in the business partner scenario, both organizations  
3790 should configure their packet filters to be as restrictive as possible from the beginning of the  
3791 implementation. The organizations also need to coordinate their testing efforts and determine  
3792 how a prototype for the solution can best be tested.

#### 3793 **9.1.4.1 Direct remote branch access versus hub-spoke**

3794 The solution for one remote location can be extended with additional remote office locations. If  
3795 one remote office needs to be able to communicate to other remote offices, another design  
3796 decision needs to be made. Either each remote office can build an IPsec tunnel to each other  
3797 remote office and bypass the main office, or each remote office can contact other remote offices  
3798 via the main office. This latter setup is called a *hub-spoke setup*.

3799 The advantage of the hub-spoke architecture is that the main office is the central hub that can  
3800 dictate policies and inspect all traffic. If a remote office wants to communicate with another  
3801 remote office, it involves two separate IPsec tunnels. The hub server decrypts the traffic from the  
3802 first remote office, performs network inspection and packet filter restrictions on the network  
3803 traffic, and then re-encrypts the traffic to send it via the second IPsec tunnel to the second remote  
3804 office. Adding a branch does not require any other branches to be reconfigured for the new  
3805 branch.

3806 The disadvantage of the hub-spoke architecture is the main office requires a lot more bandwidth  
3807 to facilitate all the remote branches' traffic to each other. It might require an IPsec service with  
3808 additional hardware acceleration network cards to be able to handle all the IPsec traffic. It also  
3809 becomes a single point of failure. When the branches communicate via their own IPsec  
3810 connections, the branches are more independent of the main office. It does require more  
3811 management, since whenever a branch office is added or modified, all other branches need to  
3812 have their IPsec configurations updated. Any network inspection configurations and packet  
3813 filters can still be centrally managed but need to be pushed out to the branch locations.

#### 3814 **9.2 Protecting Communications for Remote Users**

3815 A system administrator of a federal agency has been giving out SSH access to individual  
3816 developers who sometimes work from home. While usable for remote logins via SSH, reaching  
3817 various reporting servers required complicated port forwarding configurations for SSH that were  
3818 prone to misconfiguration. It was decided that a proper remote access VPN should be deployed.  
3819 It would allow the remote users to directly access the agency's servers from their browser once  
3820 connected to the VPN, without needing SSH.

The system administrator had also learned that the WiFi at the office was using WPA2 security, which had seen a number of attacks and was no longer considered secure enough. However, the WiFi hardware vendor had no plans to support WPA3 for the hardware they used. The system administrator wanted to treat the office WiFi as insecure and require the remote access VPN to connect to the office network, even from the office WiFi network.

## 9.2.1 Identifying Needs and Evaluating Options

As described below, a federal agency may consider a few options for protecting the connections to their secure internal network for remote users as well as local WiFi users.

- **Network Layer Solution: Network Layer VPN.** The organization could establish network layer VPNs between the developers and the agency's main office. The VPN tunnels would provide access to the agency internal resources without the need for hopping through a number of servers via SSH. The organization considers each possible network layer VPN architecture, as follows:
  - A gateway-to-gateway VPN solution is not suitable because the developers work from a number of remote locations, such as co-sharing spaces, hotels, and coffee shops. The developers need access from their laptops and phones, not desktops at home.
  - The agency already has a flexible FreeBSD-based internet gateway. A remote access VPN solution for FreeBSD would allow the agency to use its existing gateway, eliminating additional hardware costs. Each remote device would need VPN client software installed, but their laptops and phones already support IKEv2 remote access VPNs, so additional labor would be limited to supporting the developers in performing the configuration and troubleshooting issues. The agency would not even need to pay for additional VPN client licenses.
- **Transport Layer Solution: Web-Based Access Solution.** The agency could provide web-based access to resources. This could be accomplished by deploying secured web-based services. This solution would meet the requirement to protect the data in transit, but it would require the agency to deploy, secure, and maintain a public web server connected to the internet. Additionally, all HTTPS services would need to be reconfigured to require a new kind of authentication system, as currently it is assumed that anyone who can reach the internal services is authorized to use the services.
- **Application Layer Solution: File Encryption.** Instead of encrypting communications, an application layer solution could encrypt the data itself, which could then be transferred through non-encrypted communications. Using a public key from the agency, the external developers could encrypt their data and then transfer the data to the server over public networks. The data on the server could be decrypted by the developers as needed. Although file encryption is a reasonable solution for transferring files to the agency's server, it is not well-suited for protecting reports and other files that may be downloaded from the server by the external organizations. Such files would need to be encrypted so the external organizations could decrypt them. As developers join or leave the agency, or other changes occur to the set of valid keys, all files would need to be encrypted using the

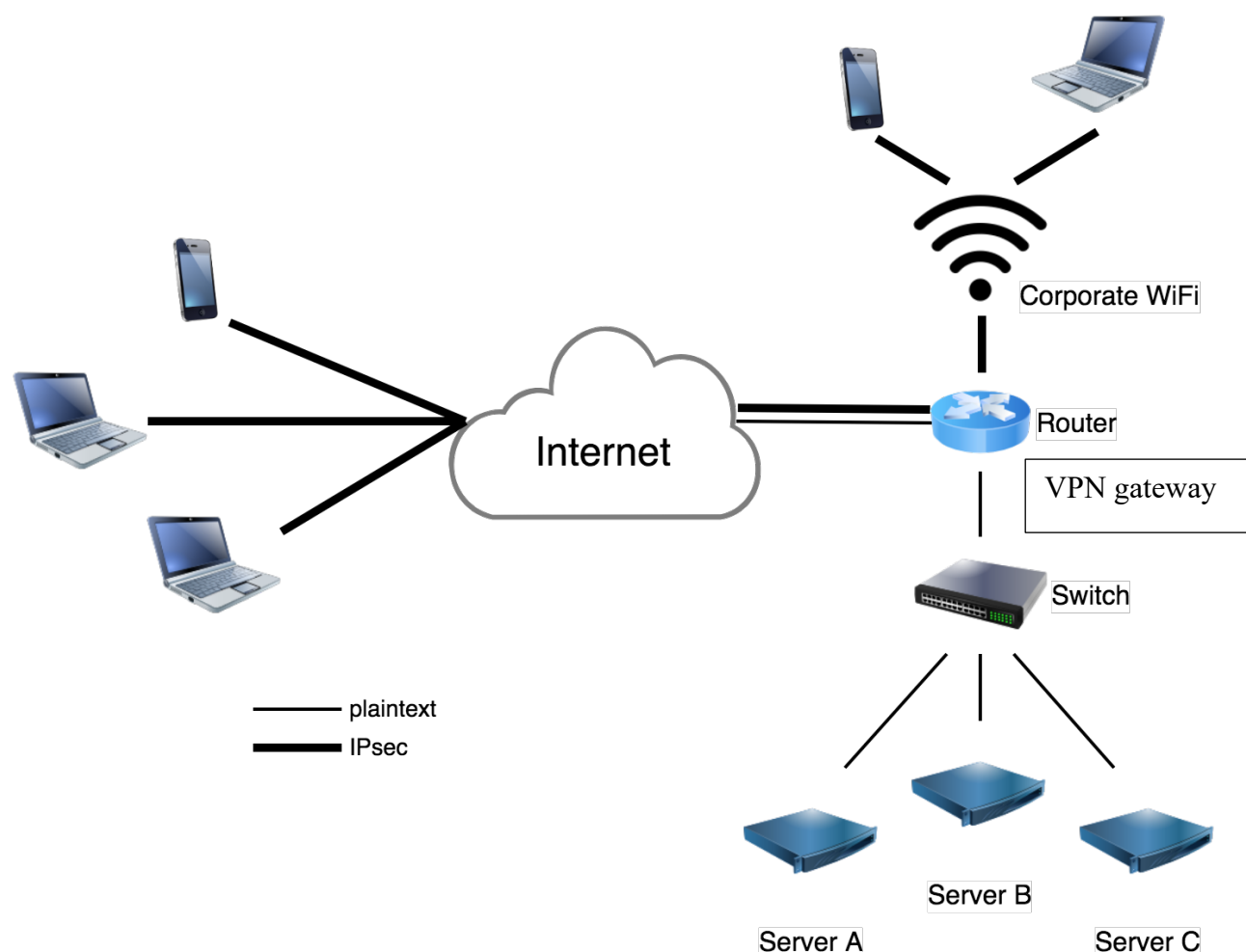
3862 new set of keys. The agency could establish a shared key for all external developers, but  
3863 this would increase the risk of unauthorized access, reduce accountability, and still  
3864 require considerable maintenance effort, such as distributing new keys in an out-of-band  
3865 manner.

3866 After further investigations into security, ease of deployment, and cost, the agency selects the  
3867 network layer VPN solution and chooses to use its existing remote access architecture. It is  
3868 important to note that this solution protects traffic only between the external developers' laptops  
3869 (at home or on the corporate WiFi) and the main office's VPN gateway; the traffic between the  
3870 VPN gateway and the local servers is not encrypted, unless the developers use the SSH protocol  
3871 to provide encryption.

## 3872 **9.2.2 Designing the Solution**

3873 The solution is based on the agency's existing FreeBSD Internet router and will only require  
3874 installing the additional strong Swan IPsec software to become an IPsec VPN gateway. The  
3875 router is lightly utilized, so an additional VPN device is not needed for the external developers'  
3876 usage. The strongSwan IPsec implementation supports EAP-TLS for authentication, which can  
3877 use the same AAA backend as the WiFi WPA2 solution. Certificates can be easily added and  
3878 revoked when developers join or leave the agency. The VPN requirement for the internal WiFi  
3879 network can be rolled out as optional first and made mandatory later by deploying a packet filter  
3880 on the firewall that connects the WiFi access point to only allow IKE and ESP packets from the  
3881 WiFi clients.

3882 Figure 18 illustrates the planned design for the VPN architecture. The internal WiFi and the  
3883 remote access clients are considered external (and insecure) networks and are on a different  
3884 segment from the internal networks of the main office. The strategy is to establish an IPsec  
3885 tunnel from the external devices to connect to the main office VPN router. Data sent between the  
3886 developers' laptops and the VPN router will be encrypted, while data between the VPN router  
3887 and the internal servers (A, B, and C) will not. The tunnel will stay intact until the external  
3888 system or the VPN router manually terminates the tunnel, or the connection is inactive for a  
3889 certain period of time. The VPN router and VPN client software on the developers' laptops  
3890 support UDP encapsulation and MOBIKE, so remote clients that are on NAT networks or have  
3891 multiple interfaces (WiFi and mobile data) can negotiate UDP encapsulation and MOBIKE to  
3892 use the IPsec solution.



**Figure 18: Remote Access VPN for Protecting Communications**

After designing the architecture, the company next considers other elements of the design and makes several decisions, including the following:

- Authentication.** In the actual deployment of the solution, the clients will be authenticated through digital certificates issued by the company's CA. The VPN router will be provisioned with a machine certificate. The certificates will be installed on the developers' laptops when these devices are locally present at the office. The IPsec client software will be configured to use the digital certificate as a user-based certificate, as this would not require any administrator privileges. When a tunnel needs to be established, the client will send its user certificate using EAP-TLS to the VPN gateway for authentication as part of the IKE exchange. The strongSwan IPsec software in the VPN gateway will act as a AAA server initially. When the company extends the solution to multiple VPN gateways for remote access to a number of remote access locations, a separate AAA backend will be set up to handle the EAP-TLS authentication. The VPN gateway will send its certificate via IKE to the remote clients as a machine certificate, so the clients do not need to contact the AAA server to authenticate the VPN's server

certificate. Instead, the client uses the CA certificate to validate the VPN gateway certificate and that this certificate matches the IKE ID of the VPN gateway.

- **Encryption and Integrity Protection Algorithms.** The VPN gateway supports multiple encryption algorithms for IKE and ESP, including AES-CBC and AES-GCM. Since not all IKEv2 clients support AES-GCM for IKE, the gateway will also allow AES-CBC with HMAC-SHA-2 for IKE. However, since most IKEv2 clients support AES-GCM for ESP, the server normally does not permit AES-CBC with HMAC-SHA-2 as a default for ESP because that would put an additional load on the server.
- **Packet Filters.** To restrict the external developers' usage as much as possible, the IPsec packet filters should be configured to permit only access to the development network over the VPN tunnel. This would ensure that the agency's internal network is minimally impacted by the remote VPN clients.
- **Split Tunneling.** The IPsec client configuration could offer split tunnel configurations. Since the developers' laptops are issued for agency use only, their configurations do not allow split tunneling. The split tunnel configuration would also not make sense on the corporate WiFi, since all traffic will always first reach the corporate gateway regardless, so it makes sense to encrypt everything for the additional security it provides in case the native WiFi link layer security is compromised. For mobile phones, the IPsec configuration could allow split-tunnel configurations, as the network traffic generated by different applications on a phone are usually isolated from each other, and the VPN could be provisioned in such a way that only the corporate application is allowed to send traffic over the corporate VPN tunnel.

### 9.2.3 Implementing a Prototype

The VPN gateway administrator performs the following steps to configure and test a prototype of the IPsec solution between an external test system and the FreeBSD VPN gateway. Section 9.2.3.1 describes the configuration of the VPN gateway device, while Section 9.2.3.2 describes the external system's configuration. The testing of the whole solution is detailed in Section 9.2.3.3.

#### 9.2.3.1 Configuring the Server

The administrator performs the following steps to configure the FreeBSD VPN gateway for use with strongSwan. It is assumed that there is an existing CA system that can issue certificates.

1. **Create a separate certificate for each device.** Device certificates use a subjectAltName (SAN) for the FQDN based on the user, a user-device@example.com like syntax, or a random globally unique identifier (GUID). For maximum compatibility, it will also set the EKU attribute for serverAuth.
2. **Create a VPN gateway machine certificate.** This certificate must have the full DNS hostname as SAN included with the certificate. Because the gateway has a static IP, a SAN for the IP address is added as well. For maximum compatibility, the EKU attribute for serverAuth is set as well.



3. **Configure global VPN server parameters.** The global parameters in the configuration files in the `/usr/local/etc/strongswan.d/` directory are reviewed. The system administrator decides to set logging to use a file instead of the default syslog.
4. **Configure the VPN server's IPsec connection and EAP-TLS RADIUS backend.** A new configuration file `remote-access.conf` is created in the `/usr/local/etc/swanctl/ipsec.d/` directory. It contains the server's IKEv2 parameters, such as the IKE ID, public IP address, local subnet (0.0.0.0/0 and/or ::0), configuration for DNS servers, lease IP addresses for clients, and tunnel. The radius server is located at IP address 10.10.10.10.

```
# /usr/local/etc/swanctl/ipsec.d/remote-access.conf
connections {
    remote-clients-eap {
        local_addrs = 192.0.2.1
        local {
            auth = pubkey
            certs = vpn.example.gov.pem
            id = vpn.example.gov
        }
        remote {
            auth = eap-tls
        }
        children {
            net {
                local_ts = 0.0.0.0/0
                updown = /usr/local/libexec/ipsec/_updown iptables
                esp_proposals = aes256gcm256-ecp256, aes256gcm256-
modp2048
            }
        }
        version = 2
        send_certreq = no
        proposals = aes256gcm256-prfsha2-ecp256, aes256-sha256-
modp2048
    }
}

pools {
    connections_pool {
        addrs = 10.11.0.0/16
    }
}
```

The EAP-TLS configuration is configured in `strongswan.conf` by editing the `libtls{}` and `plugins{}` section:

```
# /usr/local/etc/strongswan.conf
```

```

3994         plugins {
3995             eap-radius {
3996                 secret = XXXXXXXXXX
3997                 server = 10.10.10.10
3998             }
3999         }
4000
4001     libtls {
4002         suites = TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256,
4003                TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
4004     }

```

- 4005       5. **Ensure that the VPN service is started.** To ensure the strongSwan IKE daemon is  
4006       started when booting the system, the file `/etc/rc.conf` is updated and the server is  
4007       rebooted as a test.
- 4008       6. **Create provisioning profiles for those IKEv2 clients that support it.** Using  
4009       provisioning profiles can save a lot of time for the administrator and make it easier on the  
4010       users to configure their system for IPsec. Unfortunately, not all common IKEv2 clients  
4011       support this. The administrator uses the vendor enterprise tools from Apple, Microsoft,  
4012       and others to generate profiles for easy installation.
- 4013       7. **Update the firewall settings.** The firewall settings need to be updated to allow the IKE  
4014       and IPsec traffic and to allow the decrypted traffic to be inspected and then forwarded to  
4015       the right interfaces. The `/etc/rc.conf` file is updated to set  
4016       `firewall_enable="YES"`, and the file `/etc/rc.firewall` is updated to allow  
4017       protocol 50, UDP port 500, and UDP and TCP port 4500.

### 4018 9.2.3.2 Configuring the Clients

4019 After completing the VPN gateway configuration, the administrator configures an externally  
4020 located test system to be an IPsec client. The steps performed to achieve this are as follows:

- 4021       1. **If required, install IKEv2 software on the device.** On most phones and laptops, an  
4022       IKEv2-based IPsec client comes pre-installed. Because some people inside the company  
4023       use Android-based phones, and they do not have native support for IKEv2, the  
4024       strongSwan IKEv2 client is installed on them.
- 4025       2. **Configure the IPsec clients.** Each vendor's IPsec client has its own type of  
4026       configuration. Clients that support provisioning can usually install a profile configuration  
4027       file from universal serial bus (USB) media or an email attachment. Such profiles are  
4028       usually encrypted by a password to ensure that the file can be sent over an insecure  
4029       network. If provisioning is not supported, the configuration menu on the client will have  
4030       an option to add a "VPN configuration". This configuration will then ask for the remote  
4031       VPN server's DNS name, the type of configuration required, and some optional  
4032       information. Some IPsec clients have an option to import a certificate bundle, while other  
4033       IPsec clients require the user to import certificates separately from the VPN connection.

4034 Certificates usually are transported using the PKCS#12 format, which consists of an  
4035 encrypted bundle consisting of a certificate, private key, and CA certificate that are  
4036 protected by symmetric key wrapping using a key derived from a strong password.

4037 **3. Test the tunnel settings.** Once the parameters have been entered, the administrator starts  
4038 the VPN connection.

### 4039 **9.2.3.3 Testing the Solution**

4040 After completing the configuration of the VPN router and the external test clients, the VPN  
4041 gateway administrator tests the solution to ensure that the external system can successfully  
4042 establish a secure tunnel to the VPN router and transfer encrypted traffic through the tunnel.  
4043 While ping commands are a good initial test to see if things appear to be working, it is not  
4044 enough, as these packets are unusually small and will give no indication whether a large TCP  
4045 stream will work as well. Using a web browser to generate traffic is a better test. If the remote  
4046 access server provides both IPv4 and IPv6 lease IP addresses to the VPN clients, both types  
4047 should be verified to work properly. Traffic to both the corporate servers and the Internet should  
4048 be tested to ensure proper functioning of the (lack or presence of) split tunnel configuration.

4049 Tests should also ascertain that the VPN gateway will only negotiate IPsec tunnels for the  
4050 approved algorithm and will block traffic that is not encrypted. The administrator should monitor  
4051 the VPN gateway's logs for errors that indicate problems with the connection. The gateway's log  
4052 report generation tool can be useful when troubleshooting issues because it can indicate where  
4053 connections are failing or where traffic is being dropped. The administrator also deploys a packet  
4054 sniffer on the gateway or an external test device to confirm that the traffic is being protected.

4055 MOBIKE is tested by using a phone that has mobile data and WiFi connectivity. The phone  
4056 establishes a VPN connection to the VPN server using the WiFi interface. The WiFi interface is  
4057 then disabled. The VPN connection should still be working. Logs on the VPN server can be  
4058 checked to see if the VPN client's public IP address changed through a MOBIKE message. Re-  
4059 enabling WiFi should cause the VPN client to switch back to WiFi, since that is usually the  
4060 preferred connection, as it will be faster and cheaper.

### 4061 **9.2.4 Analysis**

4062 IPsec tunnels established from external systems to a trusted gateway can be effective for  
4063 protecting sensitive information from eavesdroppers. Providing secure remote access for laptops,  
4064 phones, or industrial equipment can be done using standard IKEv2 and IPsec software. Using the  
4065 existing IPsec client software and IPsec gateway eliminates the need to purchase additional  
4066 hardware or software and greatly reduces design and implementation time.

4067 Reusing the remote access VPN architecture to provide additional protection to the local WiFi  
4068 network requires less reliance on the WiFi hardware manufacturers and WiFi security protocols.  
4069 The WEP and WPA2 link layer security protocols have been cryptographically broken on a few  
4070 occasions, requiring protocol updates that are not always possible on older hardware models.  
4071 Using an IPsec solution provides confidence that the WiFi network cannot be abused or broken

into to gain access to the corporate network, as the WiFi network is as untrusted as any other host on the internet. Visitors to the office can be given guest internet access to the WiFi network using the link layer credentials without endangering the corporate network, as access to the corporate network is not possible from the office WiFi network without using the IPsec remote access VPN.

### 9.3 Remote Access to a Cloud Server Instance

An agency has outsourced some of its public facing web pages to a cloud provider. A number of virtual machines are used to provide the service from the cloud. This private cloud uses private IP addresses. The agency has one public IP address that terminates at the cloud provider. The cloud provider allows the agency to forward specific protocols and ports to one of its virtual machines. The agency forwards TCP port 80 and TCP port 443 to one of the virtual machines running the haproxy software configured as a service that load balances these connections to a number of virtual machine web servers. These web servers connect to another set of virtual machines running a database server. During peak seasons for this agency, the number of database and web servers can be increased to match demand. To update the database content on these virtual machines from the agency internal network, a VPN connection is desired. This would allow the database servers to be replicated from the agency's network to the private cloud.

The virtual cloud is using the IPv4 private space IP network 10.0.2.0/24. The cloud provider runs a virtual router on the IP address 10.0.2.254. Traffic for the cloud uses one of the cloud provider's public IP addresses, 192.1.2.78. This is the IP address for the agency's cloud webserver at cloud.example.gov. Web traffic using ports 80 and 443 to the IP address 192.1.2.78 uses NAT and is sent to the internal IP 10.0.2.2 running the haproxy service. The agency itself uses the private space IP network 192.168.0.0/16, but only wants select parts of their network to have direct access to the private cloud—192.168.103.0/24 and 2001:db8:0:2::/64. While the agency could get public IPv6 addresses for its virtual private cloud, it decides it would be safer to use private space IPv6 addresses as well, similar to how it rolled out private space IPv6 at the agency network for its database servers and workstation machines. The IPv6 private cloud will use 2001:db8:0:1::/64.

#### 9.3.1 Identifying Needs and Evaluating Options

As there is no dedicated link between the agency and the cloud provider, link-based VPNs cannot be used. The agency also wants to keep the ability to move to another cloud provider, so it does not want to use the cloud provider's VPN solution. An additional advantage of using a virtual VPN server inside the private cloud is that all traffic inside the cloud provider's network, but outside the private cloud itself, would be encrypted. Only the virtual machines of the agency would be able to see the unencrypted traffic.

Using a network layer VPN would allow the agency to extend the solution by adding IPsec VPN tunnels to other cloud providers or new physical locations. It could extend the solution to building more VPN tunnels to other physical locations or other cloud providers. A VPN tunnel could even be used to move a single server to another cloud provider without reconfiguration of any other virtual servers in the private cloud.

### 9.3.2 Designing the Solution

Since the agency is using Linux-based virtual machines at the cloud provider, it will also use a Linux-based virtual machine as its VPN server in the private cloud. It decides to use the libreswan IPsec software that comes with the Linux distribution it is using for its cloud instances. The agency already has an enterprise Linux-based server as its internet access and firewall server, so it is decided to extend that server to build an IPsec VPN to the private cloud network. This enterprise Linux server is also using libreswan. See Figure 19 for illustration of the network setting.

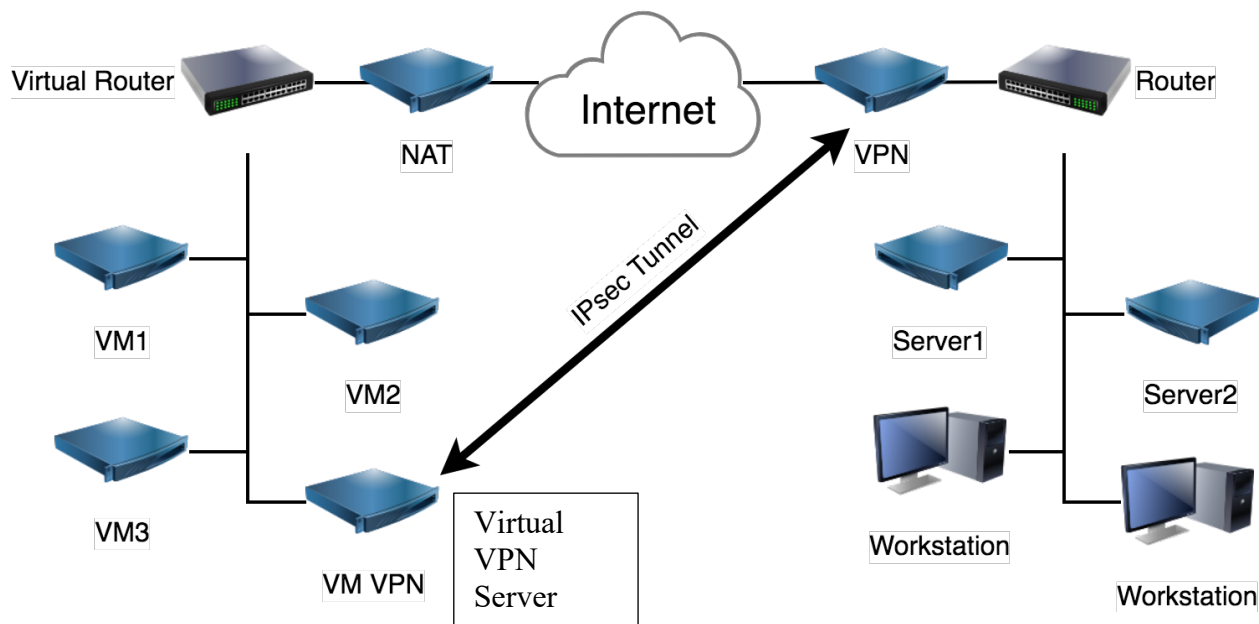


Figure 19: Remote Access to a Cloud-Based Virtual Network

After designing the architecture, the company next considers other elements of the design and makes several decisions, including the following:

- Authentication.** Libreswan supports and defaults to using IKEv2. Since both VPN endpoints are controlled by the agency, it decides to use public keys for authentication without using certificates. This will prevent the situation where certificates would expire. Using public keys without a CA is also much simpler.
- Encryption and Integrity Protection Algorithms.** Since both ends use the same enterprise Linux solution that supports libreswan running a cryptographic module operating in FIPS mode, it is decided to leave the IKE and ESP options with their default values. That means that the VPN will start out using AES-GCM with 256-bit keys for IKE and ESP, SHA-256 as the IKE PRF, and DH 14 with PFS. When NIST-approved algorithms change in the future, the Linux enterprise solution will update the libreswan software, and the configuration on the VPN servers will be automatically updated to use the new stronger algorithm requirements.

- **Packet Filters.** To restrict the VPN access to the cloud from the agency's internal network, it is decided that only workstations and servers at some specific IP addresses are allowed to have access to the private cloud, such as only two IPv4 networks and one IPv6 network for the developer workstations using 192.168.100.0/24 and the database servers using the IPv4 range 192.168.103.0/24 and the IPv6 range 2001:db8:0:2::/64.
- **MTU and TCP settings.** It is not known exactly how many layers of encapsulations are happening at the cloud provider and at the agency's Internet service provider (ISP) itself. It is known that a digital subscriber line (DSL) service adds at least one encapsulation using PPP at the data link layer. To prevent unnecessary fragmentation and possible flow issues on the database and remote SSH login connections that will use TCP, it is decided to use TCP MSS clamping and slightly reduce the MTU for packets across the VPN connection.

### 9.3.3 Implementing a Prototype

A new virtual machine instance is requested from the cloud provider. The cloud security policy is updated to temporarily allow SSH connections from port 2222 of the public IP to reach the SSH port 22 on the new VPN virtual machine. An administrative SSH public key is configured to be allowed to log in to the server, and password-based SSH logins are disabled.

Using SSH to remotely log in, the virtual machine is configured as a VPN gateway. The configuration options of libreswan uses the terms *left* and *right*. The left side of our diagram is the virtual machine VPN and the administrator uses *left\** options to refer to it. Similarly, the agency's office VPN is on the right side of the diagram and denoted by *right*.

#### 9.3.3.1 Configuring the VPN gateways

The cloud instance and the office gateway are prepared to run libreswan by:

- Updating the operating system: `yum update`
- Installing Libreswan: `yum install libreswan`
- Initializing Libreswan's NSS database: `ipsec initnss`
- Generating a new host key: `ipsec newhostkey --output /etc/ipsec.d/hostkey.secrets`
- Using the host key's `ckaid` from the previous step to obtain the public key:
  - On the cloud instance: `ipsec showhostkey --left --ckaid <ckaid>`
  - On the office gateway: `ipsec showhostkey --right --ckaid <ckaid>`
- Creating the configuration file `cloud-office.conf` with a *conn* definition for the connection named `cloud-office-ipv4` and `cloud-office-ipv6`, then uploading it to both VPN servers and placing it in the directory `/etc/ipsec.d/`

- 4172 • Customizing the left= entry on both servers, as indicated in the configuration file below
- 4173 • Updating firewall rules to allow traffic from the subnets and exempt these IP destination
- 4174 ranges from being NAT'ed. Adding a firewall rule for TCP MSS clamping.<sup>81</sup>
- 4175 • Enabling IP forwarding on the cloud instance. The built-in rp\_filter is disabled to avoid
- 4176 false positives, otherwise the kernel will drop or try to redirect traffic due to the
- 4177 encrypted and decrypted traffic using the same (single) virtual ethernet card.

```

4178 # /etc/ipsec.d/cloud-office.conf
4179
4180 conn cloud-office-base
4181     # On the cloud gateway, use left=%defaultroute to pick up its
4182     # internal IP address
4183     # left=%defaultroute
4184     # on the office gateway, use left=<IP of the cloud's public IP>
4185     left=192.1.2.78
4186     leftid=@cloud-vpn
4187     lefttrsasigkey=<value from above ipsec showhostkey --left command>
4188     right=office-gw.example.gov
4189     righted=@office-gw
4190     lefttrsasigkey=<value from above ipsec showhostkey --left command>
4191     ikev2=insist
4192     mtu=1440
4193
4194 conn cloud-office-ipv4
4195     also=cloud-office-base
4196     leftsubnets=10.0.2.0/24
4197     rightsubnets=192.168.100.0/24,192.168.103.0/24
4198     auto=add
4199
4200 conn cloud-office-ipv6
4201     also=cloud-office-base
4202     leftsubnet=2001:db8:0:1::/64
4203     rightsubnet=2001:db8:0:2::/64
4204     auto=add

```

### 4206 9.3.4 Testing the Solution

4207 The administrator is at the office, so they use SSH to log in to a third-party host that is neither  
 4208 behind the office VPN nor within the private cloud. From that machine, they use SSH to log in to  
 4209 the cloud instance VPN server. Now if the IPsec tunnels fail to come up due to a  
 4210 misconfiguration and drop all packets between the two locations, they are not locked out from  
 4211 fixing the configuration.

---

<sup>81</sup> Different Linux systems use different firewall management tools. These could be based on iptables, firewalld, or shorewall. Consult the vendor's documentation.

- 4212 • On both ends, start libreswan: `systemctl start ipsec`
- 4213 • On one end, start the IPv4 connection manually: `ipsec auto --up cloud-`
- 4214 `office-ipv4`
- 4215 • If the connection fails, it should show what happened. Consult the libreswan
- 4216 documentation and Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) if the error is unclear.
- 4217 • Once the connection establishes, a ping from one of the workstations in the office can be
- 4218 used to test: `ping 10.0.2.78`.
- 4219 • Once confirmed to work, a database replication is started to test performance.
- 4220 • Byte counters on the tunnel are confirmed using the command `ipsec`
- 4221 `trafficstatus`
- 4222 • Next, the IPv6 connection can be brought up and tested: `ipsec auto --up cloud-`
- 4223 `office-ipv6`

4224 With the tunnels have been confirmed to be working correctly, the configuration is updated to  
 4225 automatically start the tunnels when the libreswan IPsec service starts by changing `auto=add`  
 4226 to `auto=start`. The ipsec service is enabled to start at bootup on both gateways using the  
 4227 command `systemctl enable ipsec`.

4228 The port forwarding for SSH into the private cloud is disabled using the cloud management tools  
 4229 to prevent the virtual machines from being scanned by attackers from the internet. SSH access is  
 4230 still possible, as long as the connections are made from the office through the VPN connection.

### 4231 **9.3.5 Analysis**

4232 A private cloud can be safely accessed remotely by adding a virtual machine acting as a VPN  
 4233 gateway. The private cloud can be used and protected just like physical servers at a data center.  
 4234 Additionally, by requiring the use of the VPN, remote access control can be further limited to  
 4235 legitimate sources and prevent the cloud instances from being susceptible to port scanning  
 4236 attacks via port forwarding on the public IP through which the private cloud is reachable.

4237 In the future, the VPN configuration can be extended to connect to other private clouds or other  
 4238 data centers. It can also be extended to act as a remote access VPN for developers so they can  
 4239 safely connect to the private cloud from their laptops even if not at the office.

4240 Both IPv4 and IPv6 can be used, even if the cloud provider does not provide IPv6 themselves.  
 4241 This allows the agency to be proactive and compliant to regulations that mandate IPv6 readiness  
 4242 on all their equipment.

## 4243 **9.4 Cloud Encryption**

4244 A large enterprise has a number of data centers and is renting virtual machines from various  
 4245 cloud providers. While it has connected the different networks using a gateway-to-gateway  
 4246 architecture, it is concerned that traffic within these networks is not encrypted. Furthermore, its



global size makes it hard to monitor and ensure that all fiber cables and satellite links it deploys use proper data link security. For example, the agency might be renting an inter-city fiber cable to create a VLAN network that uses MPLS to connect a number of physically separate locations. It might be using MPLS without any link security. As nodes would not be aware when traffic would be local or would be traversing a fiber cable, such a network is vulnerable to unauthorized wiretaps. The desire is to encrypt as much traffic as possible between all nodes worldwide without creating chokepoints or single point of failures for encryption.

#### **9.4.1 Identifying Needs and Evaluating Options**

The goal of the project is for all network traffic to be protected by network layer-based security to ensure that a compromised segment of its global data link security would not result in plaintext data being obtained by an attacker. As the goal is to encrypt all traffic, it is infeasible to perform this at the application layer. While part of the traffic can be protected by the application's use of the TLS protocol, this would not fulfill the requirement of ensuring that all traffic is encrypted at the network layer.

As a first step for encrypting traffic between any two nodes, each node needs to have an identity. With various cloud deployments using virtualization and container technologies, it means that nodes are created and destroyed continuously. A provisioning system will need to be able to create and revoke identities for authorization. Ideally, the existing provisioning system that creates virtual machines and containers will be extended to give these services their cryptographic identity.

To comply with legal requirements and corporate compliance policies, specific traffic between certain nodes must be monitored and stored. This traffic must be exempted from the network-wide encryption policy.

Due to the sheer size of the project, it is inevitable that individual exceptions to policies need to be accommodated. A phased approach will be required where individual network managers can prepare their data center or cloud deployments for participation in the network-wide mesh encryption solution.

## 9.4.2 Designing the Solution

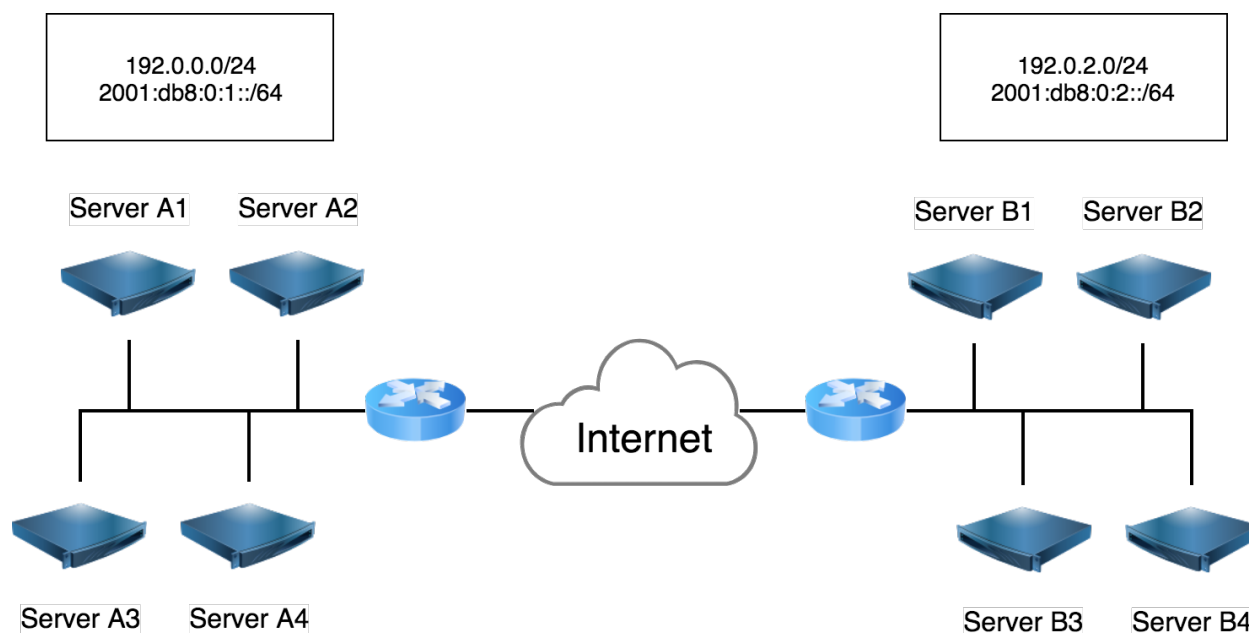


Figure 20: Mesh Encryption Using Opportunistic IPsec

**Connection Establishment.** A packet triggered IPsec based solution is chosen. Since IPsec can be easily added to physical servers, virtual servers, and container-based instances, the solution should work across most of the global infrastructure.

**Authentication.** As certificates are already used to identify many services, the IPsec nodes will be authenticated using machine certificates. At a later date, DNSSEC-based authentication using public keys will be evaluated, which will reduce the overhead of running a CA and remove the need for certificate renewal.

**Confidentiality and Integrity.** As it is expected that some nodes will have hundreds of IPsec connections, it is important to pick the most optimum cryptography. AES-GCM with 128-bit keys is used for IKE and IPsec. For DH, the DH group 19 is used to provide 128 bits of security strength for the key exchange.

**Lifetime and Idletime.** Standard IKE SA and IPsec SA lifetimes are used, although since these are not negotiated, individual managers can tune these later to optimum values depending on their traffic patterns. Similarly, idletimes are set to 15 minutes to prevent the accumulation of too many idle IKE and IPsec sessions per host, and idletimes can be tuned at a later stage as well.

**IPsec Mode.** As all networks are already connected via IPsec gateways, no NAT is deployed and the IPsec connections can use the transport mode, resulting in a larger effective MTU than if an IPsec tunnel mode was used. Transport mode also prevents a node from creating a custom policy covering more than itself.

### 9.4.3 Implementing a Prototype

To make a realistic deployment prototype, the company decides to use two networks normally reserved as staging servers that test new code before it is deployed into production. Two staging networks at different data centers are used. These two networks are already connected in a gateway-to-gateway architecture. In a first step, servers in network A and servers in network B will each be configured for mesh encryption to their local nodes only. Once the mesh IPsec encryption is functional in one network, and the mesh IPsec encryption is functional in the other network, the mesh will be extended to incorporate both networks in a single mesh configuration. This allows for further testing of IPsec-in-IPsec packets when a server from network A starts an IPsec connection to a server in network B.

- The opensource *ansible* software provisioning system is extended to create a PKCS#12 certificate for each new virtual machine that is created for network A and network B.
- An opportunistic IPsec configuration file is created and added to the ansible script to be installed on new virtual machines deployed in networks A and B.

```
# /etc/ipsec.d/mesh.conf
conn private-or-clear
    left=%defaultroute
    leftcert=provisioned-cert
    leftid=%fromcert
    rightid=%fromcert
    rightrsasigkey=%cert
    right=%opportunisticgroup
    type=transport
    failurehunt=passthrough
    auto=ondemand
```

- As part of the new virtual machine provisioning, libreswan is installed, and the generated file containing the PKCS#12 bundle with *friendly\_name* “provisioned-cert” is imported into libreswan using the `ipsec import` command.
- Opportunistic IPsec is enabled using the “private-or-clear” connection by adding the IP network ranges of the participating networks to the file:

```
/etc/ipsec.d/policies/private-or-clear:

# /etc/ipsec.d/policies/private-or-clear
192.0.0.0/24
192.0.2.0/24
2001:db8:0:1::/64
2001:db8:0:2::/64
```

#### 4336 9.4.4 Testing the Solution

4337 Traffic is generated and nodes are inspected using the `ipsec trafficstatus` command.  
4338 Once the basic mesh encryption is working, more advanced scenarios are tested.

- 4339 • A single IP address is added to the exception policy  
4340 `/etc/ipsec.d/policies/clear` to confirm communication only happens in  
4341 cleartext.
- 4342 • Both network A and network B add each other's IP ranges to the policy file for  
4343 opportunistic IPsec in `/etc/ipsec.d/policies/private-or-clear` to test  
4344 mesh encryption across the two networks.
- 4345 • Some servers are tested with a policy in `/etc/ipsec.d/policies/private`,  
4346 which mandates IPsec encryption.
- 4347 • TCP streams are tested between network A and B to confirm that there are no issues with  
4348 double encryption (a VPN over another VPN) and packet sizes.
- 4349 • An IPsec mesh IP connection is triggered, and no more traffic is sent between the nodes.  
4350 The connection is monitored to be expired due to idleness within the configured  
4351 timeframe.
- 4352 • To harden against attacks where one compromised server takes over the IKE identity of  
4353 another server while using its non-matching certificate, the `dns-match-id` option is  
4354 enabled. After testing that the mesh connections still work, one host is configured with  
4355 another host's certificate, and a mesh connection is attempted again. The connection is  
4356 tested for proper rejection.

#### 4357 9.4.5 Analysis

4358 The additional provisioning to add IPsec to the virtual machines and containers are minimal and  
4359 working. However, it was found that packet filters on the networks were no longer able to filter  
4360 traffic because most of it was encrypted. This necessitated an extension of the provisioning  
4361 system to push firewall rules to each virtual machine and container.

4362 While the initial deployment of using certificates works, using raw keys in DNSSEC would work  
4363 better for a large-scale deployment, but it would require a way to update DNS dynamically after  
4364 generating host keys for newly generated virtual machines and containers. A follow-up project is  
4365 planned for a DNSSEC-based deployment.

## 10 Work In Progress

This section briefly discusses some of the future directions of IPsec. At this time, the IETF is working on various IKE and IPsec extensions. This section provides a brief discussion of the new standards and pointers to additional information.

### 10.1 Support for Multicast and Group Authentication

*Multicast traffic* refers to sending a packet to an IP address that is designated as a multicast address; one or more hosts that are specifically interested in the communication then receive copies of that single packet. This differs from *broadcast traffic*, which causes packets to be distributed to all hosts on a subnet, because multicast traffic will only be sent to hosts that are interested in it. Multicasting is most often used to stream audio and video. For the sender, there are two primary advantages of using multicast. First, the sender only needs to create and send one packet, instead of creating and sending a different packet to each recipient. Second, the sender does not need to keep track of who the actual recipients are. Multicasting can also be advantageous from a network perspective, because it reduces network bandwidth usage.

RFC 4301 [40] describes IPsec processing for multicast traffic. RFC 5374 [82] extends the IKEv1 protocol to apply to groups and multicast traffic. It defines a new class of SAs (Group Security Associations, GSAs) and additional databases used to apply IPsec protection to multicast traffic [83]. The secret key to these GSAs is distributed to the group members. Once a member leaves the group, any secret key shared with other members has to be replaced with a new group key unknown to the group member that just left. For large groups that always have members joining and leaving, this can be complicated.

At the time of writing, IKEv2 does not support this, but a draft document is under development to add this support [84]. It defines a new G-IKEv2 extension that conforms with the Multicast Group (MEC) Security Architecture [83] and the Multicast Security (MSEC) Group Key Management Architecture [85]. G-IKEv2 replaces Group Domain of Interpretation (GDOI) [86], which defines a similar group key management protocol for IKEv1.

### 10.2 Labeled IPsec

Labeled IPsec is a mechanism to convey a security label or context that is associated with an IPsec stream. Both endpoints can apply further restrictions on the type of traffic allowed to be transmitted via the IPsec connection. Some vendors had a proprietary extension to IKEv1 to support labeled IPsec. The IETF is currently working on a draft to add this extension to IKEv2. The extension takes the form of an additional Traffic Selector with the security context that needs to be matched. This work is discussed in [87].

### 10.3 ESP Implicit IV

For IoT devices, as well as other battery-powered network devices, there is a desire to reduce the number of bytes sent over a network to save battery power. When IPsec is deployed using an AEAD such as AES-GCM, each packet contains an IV, also called a nonce. This value must be

4403 unique but may be predictable. The recommended implementation is to use a simple counter.  
4404 However, the ESP protocol itself already has a counter, which is used to defend against replay  
4405 attacks. A proposal is being developed by the IETF to define AES-GCM and AES-CCM variants  
4406 that omit sending the AEAD IV and use the ESP replay counter instead. These variants are only  
4407 defined for ESP algorithms, not the IKE algorithms. This work is discussed in [88].

#### 4408 **10.4 The INTERMEDIATE Exchange**

4409 Classic DH key exchanges could become vulnerable to quantum computing attacks. There is a  
4410 need to replace the DH key exchange with a quantum-safe key exchange. Current proposals for  
4411 such algorithms all require the use of large public keys that need to be exchanged in IKE during  
4412 the IKE\_SA\_INIT phase. During this phase of the exchange, IKEv2 fragmentation cannot yet be  
4413 used, because a confidential channel that can identify fragments as legitimate has not yet been  
4414 established. A new INTERMEDIATE exchange is placed between the IKE\_SA\_INIT and  
4415 IKE\_AUTH exchanges, which can support fragmentation. This work is discussed in [89].

#### 4416 **10.5 IPv4 and IPv6 Support in Remote Access VPNs**

4417 The telecom networks (LTE/5G) can provide notifications about whether a network connection  
4418 should be attempted with IPv4, IPv6, or both. However, IKEv2 does not offer a similar  
4419 notification structure or rich enough error notification for clients to determine if they should  
4420 attempt IPv4 or IPv6 only, or address both families (IPv4 and IPv6) for use with IPsec. A new  
4421 draft is proposing to clarify this, for better integration of 3GPP standards with IKEv2. This work  
4422 is discussed in [90].

#### 4423 **10.6 Post Quantum Key Exchange**

4424 Once there are quantum-safe key exchange algorithms that can replace the classic DH key  
4425 exchanges, the IKEv2 protocol will need to be extended to support this. One suggestion is to  
4426 keep the existing (EC)DH exchange and add on one or more quantum-safe key exchanges to the  
4427 protocol in such a way that the resulting hybrid key exchange is at least as strong as the strongest  
4428 component. This guarantees that even if a quantum-safe algorithm candidate is used and later  
4429 turns out to be unsafe, the security of the connection is still at least as strong as the known  
4430 classical DH key exchange. This design also ensures that a NIST-approved IPsec implementation  
4431 that adds a quantum-safe algorithm for protection still complies to all current NIST requirements.  
4432 This work is discussed in [91].

**Appendix A—Required Configuration Parameters for IKE and IPsec**

The table below can be used as a checklist of information required to set up a gateway-to-gateway VPN tunnel. Example values are NIST approved and ranked from most preferred to least preferred. IKE and IPsec lifetimes and maximum bytes are local values only and not negotiated.

Information		Value(s)	
Local network name:			
Remote network name:			
IKE parameters:			
IKE version: (e.g., IKEv2, IKEv1)			
IKEv1 mode: (if applicable) (e.g., Main, Aggressive)			
Local ID: (type can be: IPv4, IPv6, FQDN, email or DN <sup>82</sup> . Default is often IPv4/IPv6)	type:	value:	
Local Peer IP address or DNS name:			
Remote Peer ID: (type can be: IPv4, IPv6, FQDN, email or DN <sup>83</sup> . Default is often IPv4/IPv6)	type:	value:	
Remote Peer IP address or DNS name:			
Encryption algorithm(s): (e.g., AES-GCM, AES-XCBC, 3DES (deprecated))			
Encryption key size(s): (e.g., 128, 192, 256)			
Integrity algorithm(s): (None when using an AEAD such as AES-GCM) (e.g., HMAC-SHA-2-512, HMAC-SHA-2-384, HMAC-SHA-2-256)			
Diffie-Hellman Group: (e.g., DH 19 (ecp256), DH 20 (ecp384), DH 21 (ecp512), DH 14 (modp2048), DH 15 (modp3072), DH 16 (modp4096), DH 17 (modp6144), DH 18 (8192), DH 23, DH 24, DH 25 (ecp192), DH 26 (ecp224))	group(s):	PFS (yes/no):	
Authentication type: (e.g., ECDSA >=256, RSA-Probabilistic Signature Scheme (RSA-PSS) (>= 2048), RSA-v1.5 (legacy) (>=2048), PSK)			
If PSK: (minimum 32 random characters)			
IPsec parameters:			
DH Group for PFS: must be equal strength (or stronger) as IKE above			
Local network(s):			
Remote network(s):			
Encryption algorithm(s): (e.g., AES-GCM, AES-XCBC, 3DES (deprecated))			
Encryption key size(s): (e.g., 128, 192, 256)			
Integrity algorithm(s): (None when using an AEAD such as AES-GCM) (e.g., HMAC-SHA-2-512, HMAC-SHA-2-384, HMAC-SHA-2-256)			

<sup>82</sup> When using a certificate, instead of specifying its DN, it is often easier and more robust to use its SubjectAltName.

<sup>83</sup> When using a certificate, instead of specifying its DN, it is often easier and more robust to use its SubjectAltName.

## Appendix B—Policy Considerations

As mentioned in Section 6, organizations should develop IPsec-related policies and use them as the foundation for their IPsec planning and implementation activities. This appendix presents examples of common IPsec-related policy considerations that address the confidentiality, integrity, and availability of the IPsec implementation, as well as the conditions constituting its acceptable use. The appendix focuses on policy considerations for three sample scenarios: a gateway-to-gateway VPN between two offices of a single organization, a gateway-to-gateway VPN between two business partners, and a remote access VPN for telecommuting employees of an organization.

The examples provided in this appendix are intended only to provide a starting point for developing IPsec-related policy. Each organization needs to develop its own policy based on its environment, requirements, and needs. Also, many of the policy considerations in this section might already be addressed through an organization's existing policies. The examples in this appendix are not comprehensive; organizations should identify additional IPsec-related considerations that apply to their environments.

### B.1 Communications with a Remote Office Network

In this scenario, an organization wants to establish an IPsec VPN to protect communications between its main office's network and a remote office's network. This VPN would be created by having the organization deploy and manage an IPsec gateway on each network and configuring the gateways so that they protect communications between the networks through an IPsec tunnel as needed. This scenario assumes that the same policies apply to the main office and remote office networks. The policy consideration examples listed in this section are divided into two groups: items specific to the IPsec gateway devices and management servers, and items specific to the hosts and people using the IPsec tunnel.

#### B.1.1 IPsec Gateway Devices and Management Servers

Items that are typically part of VPN policy for gateway devices and management servers include the following:

- Roles and responsibilities related to IPsec gateway operations.
- Definition for where VPN tunnels should terminate (e.g., between the border router and firewall, on the firewall).
- Security controls that are required to monitor the unencrypted network traffic, such as network-based intrusion detection systems or antivirus software, and their acceptable placement in the network architecture relative to the IPsec gateways.
- Authentication requirements for IPsec gateway administrators (e.g., two-factor authentication). This could also include requirements to change all default manufacturer passwords on the gateways and management servers, to have a separate account for each administrator, to change administrator passwords on a regular basis, and to disable or delete an administrator account as soon as it is no longer needed.



- 4477 • Authentication requirements for IPsec tunnel users, if any. This should include a  
4478 requirement for how often user accounts are audited.
- 4479 • Authentication requirements for the IPsec gateway devices.
- 4480 • Security requirements for the IPsec gateway devices and IPsec management servers. For  
4481 example, an organization might require a firewall to be deployed between an IPsec  
4482 gateway device and its users and be configured to block all traffic not explicitly approved  
4483 for use with the IPsec implementation. An organization might also require certain  
4484 security controls on the IPsec gateway devices and management servers, such as host-  
4485 based firewalls and antivirus software.
- 4486 • What information should be kept in audit logs, how long it should be maintained, and  
4487 how often it should be reviewed.
- 4488 • Requirements for remediating vulnerabilities in the IPsec gateway devices and  
4489 management servers.
- 4490 • Which types of traffic should be protected by IPsec tunnels, and what types of protection  
4491 should be applied to each type of traffic.
- 4492 • What types of protection should be applied to communications between an IPsec gateway  
4493 and an IPsec management server.

#### 4494 **B.1.2 Hosts and People Using the IPsec Tunnel**

4495 Because the hosts and people using the IPsec tunnel are assumed to be using the organization's  
4496 equipment and networks, existing policies regarding acceptable use of the organization's systems  
4497 should already address most policy needs regarding IPsec tunnel use. Examples include host  
4498 access requirements (e.g., authentication) and vulnerability mitigation requirements (e.g.,  
4499 patching OS and application vulnerabilities). Existing policy also typically specifies technical  
4500 controls that must be used on each host, as well as the minimum acceptable configuration for the  
4501 technical controls.

#### 4502 **B.2 Communications with a Business Partner Network**

4503 In this scenario, an organization wants to establish an IPsec VPN to protect certain  
4504 communications between a system on its network and a system on a business partner's network.  
4505 This VPN would be created by having each organization deploy and manage an IPsec gateway  
4506 on its own network and configuring the gateways so that they protect communications between  
4507 the organizations through an IPsec tunnel. This section focuses on the formal agreements made  
4508 between the two organizations, and also summarizes policy considerations related to the  
4509 organization's IPsec gateway and management server, and the people and hosts within the  
4510 organization using the IPsec tunnel.

## 4511 **B.2.1 Interconnection Agreement**

4512 Federal policy requires Federal agencies to establish interconnection agreements for connections  
4513 with business partners.<sup>84</sup> Specifically, OMB Circular A-130, Appendix III, requires agencies to  
4514 obtain written management authorization before connecting their IT systems to other systems,  
4515 after determining that there is an acceptable level of risk of doing so. The written authorization  
4516 should define the rules of behavior and controls that must be maintained for the system  
4517 interconnection and should be included in the organization's system security plan. It is critical  
4518 that the organization and the business partner establish an agreement between themselves  
4519 regarding the management, operation, and use of the interconnection, and that they formally  
4520 document this agreement. The agreement should be reviewed and approved by appropriate senior  
4521 staff from each organization.

4522 An interconnection agreement is typically composed of two documents: an Interconnection  
4523 Security Agreement (ISA) and a Memorandum of Understanding or Agreement (MOU/A).<sup>85</sup> The  
4524 ISA is a security document that specifies the technical and security requirements for establishing,  
4525 operating, and maintaining the interconnection. It also supports the MOU/A between the  
4526 organizations. Specifically, the ISA documents the requirements for connecting the systems,  
4527 describes the security controls that will be used to protect the systems and data, contains a  
4528 topological drawing of the interconnection, and provides a signature line. The MOU/A  
4529 documents the terms and conditions for sharing data and information resources in a secure  
4530 manner. Specifically, the MOU/A defines the purpose of the interconnection; identifies relevant  
4531 authorities; specifies the responsibilities of both organizations; and defines the terms of  
4532 agreement, including the apportionment of costs and the timeline for terminating or reauthorizing  
4533 the interconnection. The MOU/A should not include technical details on how the interconnection  
4534 is established or maintained; that is the function of the ISA.

4535 Items that are typically part of the ISA include the following:

- 4536 • The information and data that will be made available, exchanged, or passed in only one  
4537 direction between the systems through the IPsec gateways, and the sensitivity of that  
4538 information
- 4539 • The services offered over the VPN by each organization, if any
- 4540 • The user community that will be served by the VPN
- 4541 • A description of all system security technical services pertinent to the secure exchange of  
4542 data between the systems; examples include the use of NIST-approved encryption

---

<sup>84</sup> NIST SP 800-47, *Security Guide for Interconnecting Information Technology Systems*, contains information on interconnection agreements, as well as extensive guidance on planning, establishing, maintaining, and disconnecting system interconnections, and developing an interconnection agreement [92].

<sup>85</sup> Appendices A and B of NIST SP 800-47 [92] contain detailed guidance on developing an ISA and an MOU/A as well as a sample of each. Rather than develop an ISA and MOU/A, organizations may choose to incorporate this information into a formal contract, especially if the interconnection is to be established between a Federal agency and a commercial organization. Also, in some cases, organizations may decide to use established organizational procedures for documenting the agreement, in lieu of an ISA and MOU/A.

- 4543 mechanisms to protect communications, and the use of physical security controls to  
 4544 restrict access to the IPsec gateway devices and the systems
- 4545 • A summary of the behavior expected from users who will have access to the  
 4546 interconnection; for example, each system is expected to protect information belonging to  
 4547 the other through the implementation of security controls that protect against intrusion,  
 4548 tampering, and viruses, among others
  - 4549 • The titles of formal security policies that govern each system
  - 4550 • A description of the agreements made regarding the reporting of and response to  
 4551 information security incidents for both organizations
  - 4552 • An explanation of how the audit trail responsibility will be shared by the organizations  
 4553 and what events each organization will log; this should include the length of time that  
 4554 audit logs will be retained.

4555 Items that are typically part of the MOU/A include the following:

- 4556 • A description of the systems communicating through the VPN
- 4557 • A discussion of the types of formal communications that should occur among the owners  
 4558 and the technical leads for the systems
- 4559 • A statement regarding the security of the systems, including an assertion that each system  
 4560 is designed, managed, and operated in compliance with all relevant federal laws,  
 4561 regulations, and policies.

4562 As a foundation for the interconnection agreement, the organization should have general policy  
 4563 statements regarding the appropriate and necessary use of IPsec, so that it is clear when and how  
 4564 IPsec should be used to protect an interconnection.

## 4565 **B.2.2 IPsec Gateway Devices and Management Servers**

4566 Each organization should have policy statements that apply to the security and acceptable use of  
 4567 its IPsec gateway devices and management servers, as described in Appendix B.1.1.

## 4568 **B.2.3 Hosts and People Using the IPsec Tunnel**

4569 As described in Appendix B.1.2, existing policies regarding the acceptable use and security of  
 4570 the organization's systems should already address most or all policy needs regarding IPsec  
 4571 tunnel use by hosts and people within the organization.

## 4572 **B.3 Communications for Individual Remote Hosts**

4573 In this scenario, an organization wants to establish an IPsec VPN to protect communications  
 4574 between individual remote hosts used by telecommuting employees and its main network. This  
 4575 VPN would be created by having the organization deploy and manage an IPsec gateway on its  
 4576 main network. Employees' computers would be configured with IPsec clients that would  
 4577 establish tunnels with the IPsec gateway as needed to protect communications between the

laptops and the organization's main network. This section presents policy consideration examples for remote hosts and the organization's IPsec gateway and management server.<sup>86</sup>

### **B.3.1 Remote Access Policy**

The organization should have a remote access policy that includes IPsec usage by employees from both organization-controlled and other systems. The organization might also choose to have each employee that will use the IPsec implementation sign a remote access agreement or a copy of the remote access policy before being permitted to use the systems.<sup>87</sup>

IPsec-related items that are typically in a remote access policy include the following:

- A description of appropriate and inappropriate usage of the IPsec connection (e.g., forbidding personal use and forbidding use by other individuals)
- Pointers to other organization policies that apply to remote access, such as an acceptable use policy or a VPN policy
- Remote access authentication requirements, such as two-factor authentication or strong passwords
- Requirements for the networking profile of remote hosts; for example, the policy might forbid a host from being connected to the organization's network and another network at the same time, as well as forbidding split tunneling
- Minimum hardware and software requirements for remote hosts, including acceptable operating systems and patch levels
- Required security controls for remote hosts; this could also include required configuration settings for the controls, such as scanning all files before placing them onto the host

Organizations might also wish to require remote hosts to be checked automatically for vulnerabilities, malware, or other security problems immediately after establishing an IPsec connection. This should be stated in the remote access policy.

### **B.3.2 IPsec Gateway Devices and Management Servers**

The organization should have policy statements that apply to the security and acceptable use of its IPsec gateway devices and management servers, as described in Appendix B.1.1. In addition, the organization might add policy statements specific to IPsec usage by remote hosts, such as the following:

- An automatic termination and disconnection of idle connections after X minutes

---

<sup>86</sup> Additional guidance on policy and security considerations for remote access users is available from NIST SP 800-46 [93].

<sup>87</sup> The policy and agreement could also be utilized for the use of the IPsec implementation by non-employees. Depending on the details of the policy and agreement, some changes might be needed to make them suitable for addressing non-employee use.

- 4609       • A requirement for creating and maintaining a list of authorized users, disabling access for  
4610 individual users as soon as it is no longer needed, and auditing the list of authorized users  
4611 periodically.

4612

## Appendix C—Case Study Configuration Files

This section contains configuration files that are referenced in the Section 9 case studies.

### C.1 Section 9.1 Case Study Cisco Configuration

The following lists the contents of one of the Cisco router configuration files used in the Section 9.1 gateway-to-gateway case study.

```
4618  !
4619  version 12.0
4620  service timestamps debug uptime
4621  service timestamps log uptime
4622  no service password-encryption
4623  !
4624  hostname west.example.gov
4625  !
4626  enable secret 5 $1$rMk2$5fPj5s3CvYE35OSW0qkLD.
4627  !
4628  ip subnet-zero
4629  no ip finger
4630  !
4631  crypto ikev2 proposal 1
4632     encryption aes-gcm 256
4633     prf sha256
4634     group 19
4635  !
4636  crypto ikev2 proposal 2
4637     encryption aes-cbc-256
4638     integrity sha256
4639     group 19
4640  !
4641  crypto ikev2 policy default
4642     proposal 1
4643     proposal 2
4644     match fvfr any
4645  !
4646  crypto ikev2 profile default
4647     identity local fqdn west.example.gov
4648     match identity remote fqdn east.example.gov
4649     authentication local pre-share key XXXXXXXXXX
4650     authentication remote pre-share key XXXXXXXXXX
4651  !
4652  crypto ipsec transform-set 1 esp-gcm-128
4653     mode tunnel
4654  crypto ipsec transform-set 2 esp-cbc-128
4655     mode tunnel
4656  !
4657  crypto map west-east 1 ipsec-isakmp
4658     set peer 203.0.113.1
```

```

4659 set transform-set 1 2
4660 set pfs group19
4661 set ikev2-profile default
4662 match address 100
4663 !
4664 interface g1/1
4665   ip address 198.51.100.1 255.255.255.0
4666   no ip directed-broadcast
4667   !
4668   ip classless
4669   ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 20.20.20.20
4670   no ip http server
4671   !
4672   ip access-list extended 100
4673     permit ip 192.0.0.0 0.0.0.255 192.0.2.0 0.0.0.255
4674     permit ipv6 2001:db8:0:1::/64 2001:db8:0:2::/64
4675   !
4676   line con 0
4677     login
4678     transport input none
4679   line aux 0
4680   line vty 0 4
4681     login
4682   !
4683 end

```

## 4685 C.2 Section 9.1 Case Study Alternative Using strongSwan on FreeBSD

4686 The following lists the contents of the same configuration as provided in Appendix C.1, but  
 4687 using strongSwan on FreeBSD:

```

4688 # /usr/local/etc/swanctl/swanctl.conf
4689 connections {
4690     west-east {
4691         local_addrs = 198.51.100.1
4692         remote_addrs = 203.0.113.1
4693         local {
4694             auth = psk
4695             id = west.example.gov
4696         }
4697         remote {
4698             auth = psk
4699             id = east.example.gov
4700         }
4701         children {
4702             net4-net4 {
4703                 local_ts = 192.0.0.0/24
4704                 remote_ts = 192.0.2.0/24
4705                 esp_proposals = aes128gcm128-ecp256
4706             }

```

```

4707         net6-net6 {
4708             local_ts = 2001:db8:0:1::/64
4709             remote_ts = 2001:db8:0:2::/64
4710             esp_proposals = aes128gcm128-ecp256
4711         }
4712     }
4713     version =2
4714     mobike = no
4715     proposals = aes128gcm128-prfsha256-ecp256
4716 }
4717 }
4718 secrets {
4719     ike-1 {
4720         id-1 = west.example.gov
4721         secret = XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
4722     }
4723     ike-2 {
4724         id-2 = east.example.gov
4725         secret = XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
4726     }
4727 }
4728

```

### 4729 C.3 Section 9.1 Case Study Alternative Using libreswan on Linux

4730 The following lists the contents of the same configuration as provided in Appendix C.1, but  
 4731 using libreswan on Linux:

```

4732 # /etc/ipsec.d/west-east.conf
4733 # left and right are arbitrary choices and auto-detected.
4734 # The identical configuration can be used on both gateways
4735 conn west-east
4736     left=198.51.100.1
4737     leftid=@west.example.gov
4738     right=203.0.113.1
4739     rightid=@east.example.gov
4740     ikev2=insist
4741     authby=secret
4742     auto=add
4743 conn westnet-eastnet-ipv4
4744     also=west-east
4745     leftsubnet=192.0.0.0/24
4746     rightsubnet=192.0.2.0/24
4747     auto=start
4748 conn westnet-eastnet-ipv6
4749     also=west-east
4750     leftsubnet=2001:db8:0:1::/64
4751     rightsubnet=2001:db8:0:2::/64
4752     auto=start
4753 # /etc/ipsec.d/west-east.secrets
4754 @west.example.gov @east.example.gov : PSK "XXXXXXXXXXXX"

```



4755

4756 **C.4 Section 9.1 Case Study Alternative Using ikeed on OpenBSD**

4757 The following lists the contents of the same configuration as was provided for Appendix C.1 but  
4758 using OpenIKED on OpenBSD. Note that this IKE daemon does not support AES-GCM for IKE,  
4759 only for ESP. The order of the keywords matter.

```
4760 # /etc/iked.conf
4761 ikev2 westnet-eastnet esp \
4762 from 192.0.0.0/24 to 192.0.0.0/24 \
4763 from 2001:db8:0:1::/64 to 2001:db8:0:2::/64 \
4764 local 198.51.100.1 peer 203.0.113.1 \
4765 ikesa enc aes-256 auth hmac-sha2-256 group ecp256 group modp2048 \
4766 childsa enc aes-128-gcm \
4767 childsa enc aes-128 auth hmac-sha2_512
4768 srcid west.example.gov dstid east.example.gov \
4769 psk XXXXXXXXX \
4770 tag west-east
4771
```

4772

## 4773 Appendix D—Glossary

4774 Selected terms used in the publication are defined below.

4775	Asymmetric Cryptography	Cryptography that uses two separate keys to exchange data, one to encrypt or digitally sign the data and one for decrypting the data or verifying the digital signature. Also known as <i>public key cryptography</i> .
	Authentication Header (AH)	A deprecated IPsec security protocol that provides integrity protection (but not confidentiality) for packet headers and data.
	Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)	The core IPsec security protocol; can provide encryption and/or integrity protection for packet headers and data.
	Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP)	A framework for adding arbitrary authentication methods in a standardized way to any protocol.
	Internet Key Exchange (IKE)	A protocol used to negotiate, create, and manage its own (IKE) and IPsec security associations.
	IP Payload Compression Protocol (IPComp)	A protocol used to perform lossless compression for packet payloads.
	Keyed Hash Algorithm	An algorithm that creates a message authentication code based on both a message and a secret key shared by two endpoints. Also known as a <i>hash message authentication code algorithm</i> .
	Mobile Internet Key Exchange (MOBIKE)	A form of IKE supporting the use of devices with multiple network interfaces that switch from one network to another while IPsec is in use.
	Network Layer Security	Protecting network communications at the layer of the IP model that is responsible for routing packets across networks.
	Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)	An option that causes a new secret key to be created and shared through a new Diffie-Hellman key exchange for each IPsec SA. This provides protection against the use of compromised old keys that could be used to attack the newer derived keys still in use for integrity and confidentiality protection.
	Preshared Key (PSK)	A single secret key used by IPsec endpoints to authenticate endpoints to each other.
	Security Association (SA)	A set of values that define the features and protections applied to a connection.

Security Association Database (SAD)	A list or table of all IPsec SAs, including those that are still being negotiated.
Security Parameters Index (SPI)	An arbitrarily chosen value that acts as a unique identifier for an IPsec connection.
Security Policy Database (SPD)	A prioritized list of all IPsec policies.
Symmetric Cryptography	A cryptographic algorithm that uses the same secret key for its operation and, if applicable, for reversing the effects of the operation (e.g., an AES key for encryption and decryption).
Traffic Flow Confidentiality (TFC) Padding	Dummy data added to real data in order to obfuscate the length and frequency of information sent over IPsec.
Transport Mode	An IPsec mode that does not create an additional IP header for each protected packet.
Tunnel Mode	An IPsec mode that creates an additional outer IP header for each protected packet.
Virtual Private Network (VPN)	A virtual network built on top of existing physical networks that can provide a secure communications mechanism for data and IP information transmitted between networks or between different nodes on the same network.

## 4777 **Appendix E—Acronyms and Abbreviations**

4778 Acronyms and abbreviations used in this publication are defined below.

3DES	Triple Data Encryption Standard
3GPP	3 <sup>rd</sup> Generation Partnership Project
5G	5 <sup>th</sup> Generation
6LoWPAN	Low-Power Wireless Personal Area Network
AAA	Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting
AEAD	Authenticated Encryption with Associated Data
AES	Advanced Encryption Standard
AES-CBC	Advanced Encryption Standard-Cipher Block Chaining
AES-CCM	Advanced Encryption Standard-Counter with CBC-MAC
AES-CMAC	Advanced Encryption Standard-Cipher-Based Message Authentication Code
AES-GCM	Advanced Encryption Standard-Galois Counter Mode
AES-GMAC	Advanced Encryption Standard-Galois Message Authentication Code
AES-SHA-2	Advanced Encryption Standard-Secure Hash Algorithm-2
AES-XCBC	Advanced Encryption Standard-eXtended Cipher Block Chaining
AH	Authentication Header
ALG	Application Layer Gateway
API	Application Programming Interface
ARP	Address Resolution Protocol
BGP	Border Gateway Protocol
BIOS	Basic Input/Output System
BMP	BGP Monitoring Protocol
CA	Certificate Authority
CAVP	Cryptographic Algorithm Validation Program
CBC	Cipher Block Chaining
CCMP	Counter Mode with Cipher Block Chaining Message Authentication Code Protocol
CGN	Carrier Grade NAT
CHAP	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol
CIDR	Classless Inter-Domain Routing
CMVP	Cryptographic Module Validation Program
CoAP	Constrained Application Protocol
COTS	Commercial-Off-the-Shelf
CP	Configuration Payload
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CRL	Certificate Revocation List
CSE	Communications Security Establishment
CVE	Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures
DDoS	Distributed Denial of Service
DES	Data Encryption Standard
DH	Diffie-Hellman

DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
DNS-SD	Domain Name System Service Discovery
DNSSEC	Domain Name System Security Extensions
DPD	Dead Peer Detection
DSA	Digital Signature Algorithm
DSL	Digital Subscriber Line
DTLS	Datagram Transport Layer Security
EAP	Extensible Authentication Protocol
EAP-MSCHAPv2	Extensible Authentication Protocol-Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol version 2
EAP-SIM	Extensible Authentication Protocol-Subscriber Identity Module
EAP-TLS	Extensible Authentication Protocol-Transport Layer Security
ECDH	Elliptic Curve Diffie-Hellman
ECDSA	Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm
ECP	Elliptic Curve Groups Modulo a Prime
EdDSA	Edwards Curve Digital Signature Algorithm
EKU	Extended Key Usage
ESN	Extended Sequence Number
ESP	Encapsulating Security Payload
ESPinUDP	ESP encapsulated in UDP
ESP-NULL	Encapsulating Security Payload without encryption
EVPN	Ethernet Virtual Private Network
FAQ	Frequently Asked Questions
FIDO	Fast Identity Online
FIPS	Federal Information Processing Standards
FISMA	Federal Information Security Modernization Act
FOIA	Freedom of Information Act
FQDN	Fully Qualified Domain Name
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
GDOI	Group Domain of Interpretation
GENEVE	Generic Network Virtualization Encapsulation
GMAC	Galois Message Authentication Code
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation
GSA	Group Security Association
GSO	Generic Segmentation Offload
GSSAPI	Generic Security Services Application Program Interface
GUID	Globally Unique Identifier
HKDF	HMAC Key Derivation Function
HMAC	Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code
HMAC-MD5	Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code-Message Digest
HMAC-SHA-1	Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code-Secure Hash Algorithm
HMAC-SHA-2	Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code-Secure Hash Algorithm
HTTP	HyperText Transfer Protocol
HTTPS	HyperText Transfer Protocol Secure

ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
ICV	Integrity Check Value
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IGMP	Internet Group Management Protocol
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
IKE	Internet Key Exchange
IMAP	Internet Message Access Protocol
Intel VT-d	Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O
IoT	Internet of Things
IP	Internet Protocol
IPComp	IP Payload Compression Protocol
IPsec	Internet Protocol Security
IPv4	Internet Protocol version 4
IPv6	Internet Protocol version 6
ISA	Interconnection Security Agreement
ISAKMP	Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol
ISP	Internet Service Provider
IT	Information Technology
ITL	Information Technology Laboratory
IV	Initialization Vector
KDF	Key Derivation Function
KE	Key Exchange
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol
L2VPN	Layer 2 VPN
LAN	Local Area Network
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
LTE	Long-Term Evolution
LZS	Lempel-Ziv-Stac
MAC	Message Authentication Code
MACsec	Media Access Control Security
MD	Message Digest
mDNS	Multicast Domain Name System
MEC	Multicast Group
MKA	MACsec Key Agreement
MOBIKE	Mobile Internet Key Exchange
MODP	Modular Exponential
MOU/A	Memorandum of Understanding or Agreement
MPLS	Multi-Protocol Label Switching
MPPE	Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption
MS-CHAP	Microsoft Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol
MS-CHAPv1	Microsoft Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol version 1
MS-CHAPv2	Microsoft Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol version 2
MSEC	Multicast Security
MSS	Maximum Segment Size
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit

NAPT	Network Address Port Translation
NAT	Network Address Translation
ND	Neighbor Discovery
NETCONF	Network Configuration Protocol
NIC	Network Interface Card
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
NSA	National Security Agency
NUMA	Non-Uniform Memory Access
NVD	National Vulnerability Database
NVO3	Network Virtualization Overlay
OAuth	Open Authorization
OCSP	Online Certificate Status Protocol
OMB	Office of Management and Budget
OSPF	Open Shortest Path First
OTP	One-Time Password
P.L.	Public Law
PAKE	Password Authenticated Key Exchange
PAM	Pluggable Authentication Module
PAP	Password Authentication Protocol
PFS	Perfect Forward Secrecy
PKCS	Public Key Cryptography Standards
PKI	Public Key Infrastructure
POP	Post Office Protocol
PPK	Postquantum Preshared Key
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PPTP	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol
PRF	Pseudo Random Function
PSK	Preshared Key
PSS	Probabilistic Signature Scheme
QoS	Quality of Service
RADIUS	Remote Authentication Dial In User Service
RAM	Random Access Memory
RFC	Request for Comment
RMON	Remote Monitoring
S/MIME	Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions
SA	Security Association
SAD	Security Association Database
SAN	subjectAltName
SDN	Software-Defined Networking
SDWAN	Software-Defined Wide Area Network
SHA	Secure Hash Algorithm
SIP	Session Initiation Protocol
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
SP	Special Publication

SPD	Security Policy Database
SPI	Security Parameters Index
SPKI	SubjectPublicKeyInfo
SSH	Secure Shell
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer
SSTP	Secure Socket Tunneling Protocol
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol
TCP-TLS	Transmission Control Protocol-Transport Layer Security
TFC	Traffic Flow Confidentiality
TKIP	Temporal Key Integrity Protocol
TLS	Transport Layer Security
TSi	Traffic Selector for Initiator
TSO	TCP Segmentation Offload
TSr	Traffic Selector for Responder
TTL	Time to Live
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
URI	Uniform Resource Indicator
USB	Universal Serial Bus
US-CERT	United States Computer Emergency Readiness Team
VLAN	Virtual Local Area Network
VM	Virtual Machine
VoIP	Voice over IP
VPN	Virtual Private Network
VXLAN	Virtual eXtensible Local Area Network
WEP	Wired Equivalent Privacy
WiFi	Wireless Fidelity
WPA	Wi-Fi Protected Access
WPA2	Wi-Fi Protected Access version 2
WPA3	Wi-Fi Protected Access version 3
XCBC	eXtended Cipher Block Chaining



4780 **Appendix F—References**

4781 This appendix contains the references for the document.

- [1] Eggert L, Fairhurst G, Shepherd G (2017) *UDP Usage Guidelines*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8085 and Best Current Practice 145. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8085>
- [2] van Elburg J, Drage K, Ohsugi M, Schubert S, Arai K (2014) *The Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) P-Private-Network-Indication Private Header (P-Header)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 7316. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC7316>
- [3] Saito M, Wing D, Toyama M (2011) *Media Description for the Internet Key Exchange Protocol (IKE) in the Session Description Protocol (SDP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 6193. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC6193>
- [4] Mahalingam M, Dutt D, Duda K, Agarwal P, Kreeger L, Sridhar T, Bursell M, Wright C (2014) *Virtual eXtensible Local Area Network (VXLAN): A Framework for Overlaying Virtualized Layer 2 Networks over Layer 3 Networks*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 7348. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC7348>
- [5] Filsfils C, Previdi S, Ginsberg L, Decraene B, Litkowski S, Shakir R (2018) *Segment Routing Architecture*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8402. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8402>
- [6] Yong L, Dunbar L, Toy M, Isaac A, Manral V (2017) *Use Cases for Data Center Network Virtualization Overlay Networks*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8151. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8151>
- [7] Gross J, Ganga I, Sridhar T (2019) *Geneve: Generic Network Virtualization Encapsulation*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Internet-Draft draft-ietf-nvo3-geneve-13. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-ietf-nvo3-geneve/>
- [8] Baker F, Meyer D (2011) *Internet Protocols for the Smart Grid*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 6272. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC6272>
- [9] Pauly T, Touati S, Mantha R (2017) *TCP Encapsulation of IKE and IPsec Packets*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8229. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8229>

- [10] Bhatia M, Manral V (2011) *Summary of Cryptographic Authentication Algorithm Implementation Requirements for Routing Protocols*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 6094. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC6094>
- [11] Scudder J, Fernando R, Stuart S (2016) *BGP Monitoring Protocol (BMP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 7854. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC7854>
- [12] Gupta M, Melam N (2006) *Authentication/Confidentiality for OSPFv3*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 4552. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4552>
- [13] National Institute of Standards and Technology (2019) *Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules*. Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-3. <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/FIPS/NIST.FIPS.140-3.pdf>
- [14] Ramsdell B, Turner S (2010) *Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (S/MIME) Version 3.2 Message Specification*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 5751. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC5751>
- [15] Ylonen T, Lonvick C (2006) *The Secure Shell (SSH) Transport Layer Protocol*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 4253. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4253>
- [16] Rescorla E (2018) *The Transport Layer Security (TLS) Protocol Version 1.3*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8446. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8446>
- [17] Rescorla E, Tschofenig H, Modadugu N (2019) *The Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) Protocol Version 1.3*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Internet-Draft draft-ietf-tls-dtls13-31. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-ietf-tls-dtls13/>
- [18] Kaufman C, Hoffman P, Nir Y, Eronen P, Kivinen T (2014) *Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 7296 and Internet Standard 79. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC7296>
- [19] Kent S (2005) *IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 4303. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4303>
- [20] Nir Y, Kivinen T, Wouters P, Migault D (2017) *Algorithm Implementation Requirements and Usage Guidance for the Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8247. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8247>

- [21] Wouters P, Migault D, Mattsson J, Nir Y, Kivinen T (2017) *Cryptographic Algorithm Implementation Requirements and Usage Guidance for Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) and Authentication Header (AH)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8221. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8221>
- [22] Frankel S, Krishnan S (2011) *IP Security (IPsec) and Internet Key Exchange (IKE) Document Roadmap*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 6071. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC6071>
- [23] Rosen E, Viswanathan A, Callon R (2001) *Multiprotocol Label Switching Architecture*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 3031. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC3031>
- [24] National Institute of Standards and Technology (2008) *The Keyed-Hash Message Authentication Code (HMAC)*. (U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC), Federal Information Processing Standards Publication (FIPS) 198-1. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.FIPS.198-1>
- [25] National Institute of Standards and Technology (2015) *Secure Hash Standard (SHS)*. (U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC), Federal Information Processing Standards Publication (FIPS) 180-4. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.FIPS.180-4>
- [26] National Institute of Standards and Technology (2001) *Advanced Encryption Standard*. (U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC), Federal Information Processing Standards Publication (FIPS) 197. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.FIPS.197>
- [27] Dworkin M (2005) *Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes of Operation: The CMAC Mode for Authentication*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-38B, Includes updates as of October 6, 2016. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-38B>
- [28] Dworkin M (2007) *Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes of Operation: Galois/Counter Mode (GCM) and GMAC*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-38D. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-38D>
- [29] National Institute of Standards and Technology (2013) *Digital Signature Standard (DSS)*. (U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC), Federal Information Processing Standards Publication (FIPS) 186-4. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.FIPS.186-4>

- [30] Enns R, Bjorklund M, Schoenwaelder J, Bierman A (2011) *Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 6241. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC6241>
- [31] Carrel D, Weis B (2019) *IPsec Key Exchange using a Controller*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Internet-Draft draft-carrel-ipsecme-controller-ike-01. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-carrel-ipsecme-controller-ike>
- [32] Eronen P (2006) *IKEv2 Mobility and Multihoming Protocol (MOBIKE)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 4555. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4555>
- [33] Aboba B, Calhoun P (2003) *RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service) Support For Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 3579. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC3579>
- [34] Eronen P, Hiller T, Zorn G (2005) *Diameter Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) Application*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 4072. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4072>
- [35] Rekhter Y, Moskowitz B, Karrenberg D, de Groot G J, Lear E (1996) *Address Allocation for Private Internets*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 1918 and Best Current Practice (BCP) 5. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC1918>
- [36] Smyslov V (2014) *Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2) Message Fragmentation*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 7383. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC7383>
- [37] Fluhrer S, McGrew D, Kampanakis P, Smyslov V (2019) *Postquantum Preshared Keys for IKEv2*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Internet-Draft draft-ietf-ipsecme-qr-ikev2-08. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-ietf-ipsecme-qr-ikev2/>
- [38] Devarapalli V, Weniger K (2009) *Redirect Mechanism for the Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 5685. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC5685>
- [39] Kent S, Atkinson R (1998) *IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 2406. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC2406>

- [40] Kent S, Seo K (2005) *Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 4301. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4301>
- [41] Krawczyk H, Bellare M, Canetti R (1997) *HMAC: Keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 2104. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC2104>
- [42] Frankel S, Herbert H (2003) *The AES-XCBC-MAC-96 Algorithm and Its Use With IPsec*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 3566. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC3566>
- [43] Black D, McGrew D (2008) *Using Authenticated Encryption Algorithms with the Encrypted Payload of the Internet Key Exchange version 2 (IKEv2) Protocol*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 5282. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC5282>
- [44] Viega J, McGrew D (2005) *The Use of Galois/Counter Mode (GCM) in IPsec Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 4106. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4106>
- [45] Frankel S, Glenn R, Kelly S (2003) *The AES-CBC Cipher Algorithm and Its Use with IPsec*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 3602. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC3602>
- [46] Kelly S, Frankel S (2007) *Using HMAC-SHA-256, HMAC-SHA-384, and HMAC-SHA-512 with IPsec*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 4868. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4868>
- [47] Barker E, Roginsky A (2019) *Transitioning the Use of Cryptographic Algorithms and Key Lengths*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-131A, Rev. 2. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-131Ar2>
- [48] Kent S (2005) *Extended Sequence Number (ESN) Addendum to IPsec Domain of Interpretation (DOI) for Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 4304. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4304>
- [49] Pauly T, Touati S, Mantha R (2017) *TCP Encapsulation of IKE and IPsec Packets*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8229. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8229>

- [50] McDonald D, Metz C, Phan B (1998) *PF\_KEY Key Management API, Version 2*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 2367. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC2367>
- [51] Salim J, Khosravi H, Kleen A, Kuznetsov A (2003) *Linux Netlink as an IP Services Protocol*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 3549. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC3549>
- [52] Shafer P (2011) *An Architecture for Network Management Using NETCONF and YANG*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 6244. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC6244>
- [53] Srisuresh P, Holdrege M (1999) *IP Network Address Translator (NAT) Terminology and Considerations*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 2663. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC2663>
- [54] Moriarty K, Morton A (2018) *Effects of Pervasive Encryption on Operators*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8404. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8404>
- [55] Korver B (2007) *The Internet IP Security PKI Profile of IKEv1/ISAKMP, IKEv2, and PKIX*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 4945. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4945>
- [56] Kuhn DR, Hu VC, Polk WT, Chang S-jH (2001) *Introduction to Public Key Technology and the Federal PKI Infrastructure*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-32. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-32>
- [57] Cooper D, Santesson S, Farrell S, Boeyen S, Housley R, Polk W (2008) *Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Certificate and Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Profile* (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 5280. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC5280>
- [58] Santesson S, Myers M, Ankney R, Malpani A, Galperin S, Adams C (2013) *X.509 Internet Public Key Infrastructure Online Certificate Status Protocol – OCSP*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 6960. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC6960>
- [59] Esale S, Torvi R, Jalil L, Chunduri U, Raza K (2017) *Application-Aware Targeted LDP*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8223. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8223>



- [60] Barker E, Chen L, Roginsky A, Vassilev A, Davis R, Simon S (2019) *Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Using Integer Factorization Cryptography*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-56B, Rev. 2. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-56Br2>
- [61] Fu D, Solinas J (2010) *Elliptic Curve Groups modulo a Prime (ECP Groups) for IKE and IKEv2*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 5903. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC5903>
- [62] Barker E, Chen L, Roginsky A, Vassilev A, Davis R (2018) *Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key-Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-56A, Rev. 3. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-56Ar3>
- [63] Sheffer Y, Tschofenig H (2010) *Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2) Session Resumption*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 5723. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC5723>
- [64] Kivinen T, Kojo M (2003) *More Modular Exponential (MODP) Diffie-Hellman groups for Internet Key Exchange (IKE)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 3526. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC3526>
- [65] Lepinski M, Kent S (2008) *Additional Diffie-Hellman Groups for Use with IETF Standards*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 5114. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC5114>
- [66] Kuhn D R, Walsh T, Fries S (2005) *Security Considerations for Voice Over IP Systems*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-58. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-58>
- [67] Souppaya M, Scarfone K (2012) *Guidelines for Securing Wireless Local Area Networks (WLANs)*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-153. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-153>
- [68] Rescorla E, Modadugu N (2012) *Datagram Transport Layer Security Version 1.2*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 6347. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC6347>
- [69] Frankel S, Hoffman P, Orebaugh A, Park R (2008) *Guide to SSL VPNs*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-113. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-113>

- [70] Mavrogiannopoulos N (2018) *The OpenConnect VPN Protocol Version 1.1*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Internet-Draft draft-mavrogiannopoulos-openconnect-02. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-mavrogiannopoulos-openconnect/>
- [71] Krawczyk H, Eronen P (2010) *HMAC-based Extract-and-Expand Key Derivation Function (HKDF)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 5869. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC5869>
- [72] Nir Y, Josefsson S (2016) *Curve25519 and Curve448 for the Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2) Key Agreement*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8031. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8031>
- [73] Nir Y, Langley A (2015) *ChaCha20 and Poly1305 for IETF Protocols*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 7539. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC7539>
- [74] Nir Y (2018) *Using the Edwards-Curve Digital Signature Algorithm (EdDSA) in the Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 8420. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC8420>
- [75] Simpson W (1994) *The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 1661 and Standard 51. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC1661>
- [76] Hamzeh K, Pall G, Verthein W, Taarud J, Little W, Zorn G (1999) *Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 2637. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC2637>
- [77] Pall G, Zorn G (2001) *Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption (MPPE) Protocol*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 3078. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC3078>
- [78] Lloyd B, Simpson W (1992) *PPP Authentication Protocols*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 1334. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC1334>
- [79] Simpson W (1996) *PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 1994. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC1994>



- [80] Townsley W, Valencia A, Rubens A, Pall G, Zorn G, Palter B (1999) *Layer Two Tunneling Protocol “L2TP”*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 2661. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC2661>
- [81] Rigney C, Willens S, Rubens A, Simpson W (2000) *Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 2865. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC2865>
- [82] Weis B, Gross G, Ignjatic D (2008) *Multicast Extensions to the Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 5374. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC5374>
- [83] Hardjono T, Weis B (2004) *The Multicast Group Security Architecture*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 3740. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC3740>
- [84] Weis B, Smyslov V (2019) *Group Key Management using IKEv2*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Internet-Draft draft-yeung-g-ikev2-15. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-yeung-g-ikev2/>
- [85] Baugher M, Canetti R, Dondeti L, Lindholm F (2005) *Multicast Security (MSEC) Group Key Management Architecture*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 4046. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC4046>
- [86] Weis B, Rowles S, Hardjono T (2011) *The Group Domain of Interpretation*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Request for Comments (RFC) 6407. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC6407>
- [87] Prasad S, Wouters P (2018) *Labeled IPsec Traffic Selector Support for IKEv2*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Internet-Draft draft-ipsecme-labeled-ipsec-00. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-ietf-ipsecme-labeled-ipsec/>
- [88] Migault D, Guggemos T, Nir Y (2019) *Implicit IV for Counter-Based Ciphers in Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Internet-Draft draft-ietf-ipsecme-implicit-iv-07. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-ietf-ipsecme-implicit-iv/>
- [89] Smyslov V (2018) *Intermediate Exchange in the IKEv2 Protocol*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Internet-Draft draft-smyslov-ipsecme-ikev2-aux-02. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-smyslov-ipsecme-ikev2-aux/>

- [90] Boucadair M (2018) *IKEv2 Notification Status Types for IPv4/IPv6 Coexistence*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Internet-Draft draft-ietf-ipsecme-ipv6-ipv4-codes-02. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-ietf-ipsecme-ipv6-ipv4-codes/>
- [91] Tjhai C, Tomlinson M, Bartlett G, Flurher S, Van Geest D, Garcia-Morchon O, Smyslov V (2019) *Framework to Integrate Post-Quantum Key Exchanges Into Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)). Internet-Draft draft-tjhai-ipsecme-hybrid-qske-ikev2-03. <https://datatracker.ietf.org/doc/draft-tjhai-ipsecme-hybrid-qske-ikev2/>
- [92] Grance T, Hash J, Peck S, Smith J, Korow-Diks K (2002) *Security Guide for Interconnecting Information Technology Systems*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-47. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-47>
- [93] Souppaya M, Scarfone K (2016) *Guide to Enterprise Telework, Remote Access, and Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) Security*. (National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD), NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-46, Rev. 2. <https://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-46r2>
- [94] Harkins D, Carrel D (1998) *The Internet Key Exchange (IKE)*. (Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Network Working Group). Request for Comments (RFC) 2409. <https://doi.org/10.17487/RFC2409>